# Plugins

In addition to the shop system, Shopware also offers various plugins, which you can purchase from the store. This allows you to customize your Shopware shop and integrate additional functions. In this section of the documentation everything revolves around the installation and configuration of these plugins.

All plugins are managed in the Plugin Manager, which you can find under the menu item "Settings" in your backend. You can purchase, download, install and activate the plugins there quickly and easily.

# **Shopware Core Plugins**

# Introduction

Shopware delivers some extensions in the Plugin Manager already after the installation, which can be found in the tab "Uninstalled". If desired, certain functionalities can be activated that influence the frontend or system processes. Here we show you which tasks these plugins fulfill. At the same time you will also find the appropriate articles for the respective topic.

# **View in the Plugin Manager**

Navigate to the Plugin Manager, which you can find in the backend under the menu item Settings. There you can click on "Installed".

tugin Munager								89
	O Lipitual proper						Q, 1999	
2000	Pagin name	and the second s	Induited on	Updated ov	Linesia	anter .	Dryrigeni In	
Account	E Instation (2 Plugine)							
Self-	C Stateters	18	10100218	10102010		1	Charges and 210.	100
the account	B teather	1.0	10100214	10192210		1	theories 20-	10
Ap practication	😔 inautties († Piegires)							
oprost.	Shopware Auto Update	1.0.0	96952513	lackd91a		1.1	thepases 111	102
lane.	21 Streamber (19 Program)							
and a second second	Cor.	1					shepran 44	10
Printer Printer	Condition	- NS					Spillinger 111	10
	t Contains	1					streament Al).	10
12447	ef Curdnel	1					stepses 111	10
scand the following as	Typesteries Devic	13					these and	10
Nectral	III Nothcator						Property 242	10
lighters.	TopCinet	1.					stream and All	10
tertes.	Contract (	1.0.0					theory AG	10
passal offer	GP Gertheiketborrt	100					Property 212	10
Contraction in the Contraction of Co	() contration	188					Shearnane AU	10

You can easily install the plugins by clicking on the "plus" symbol - also remember to activate the plugin afterwards!

#### How do I update the plugins?

Unlike plugins from the Community Store, you don't need to update the core plugins yourself. If there are any changes here, they will be done by a Shopware update.

### **Plugin: Statistics**

This plugin is installed and activated by default and is used to provide the statistics functions in Shopware.

Further information can be found in the article Marketing - Analysis

### **Plugin: Input Filter**

Also this plugin is installed by default and fulfills an important purpose. With the Input Filter Shopware provides a number of protection measures against attackers from the Internet, such as protection against SQL injections or XSS protection. Also own filters can be maintained, so that the input of certain contents (scripts or similar) in your shop is not possible.

Further information can be found in the article System - Input filter

# **Plugin: Shopware Auto Update**

The name already gives an idea of the purpose of this plugin. The extension allows you to update your shopware system via the backend.

Further information can be found in the article Update Shopware

# **Plugin: Cron**

The Plugin Cron is generally necessary for the execution of automated processes. By default, these are processes that clean up the system at regular intervals and rebuild indexes. Plugins from the Community Store also often use this function.

Further information can be found in the article Cronjobs

This plugin must be installed and activated in order to use the following Cronjob plugins!

# **Plugin: CronBirthday**

Besides the Cron Plugin, which implements the basic function of the Cronjobs, we have CronBirthday here. The name suggests that it can be used to send automated mails to customers with birthdays.

You can find more information in the article Vouchers - Send birthday email including a voucher

# **Plugin: CronRating**

Another useful automated e-mail function is activated with the plugin CronRating. This makes it possible to inform your customers automatically about the possibility of an article rating. This plugin also requires the Cron plugin.

Further information can be found in the article Customer reviews - Automatic Reminder

# **Plugin: CronStock**

The overview of the article stock is not always quite simple with many articles. With this plugin you can be informed as soon as the minimum stock of an article is undercut. The configuration you make in the Cronjob control.

# Plugin: CronProductExport

This plugin is required so that the product exports can be generated automatically via the cronjobs. With this plugin you have the possibility to coordinate the generation in such a way that it is executed at low frequented times.

You can find the Cronjob under the name CronProductExport in the Cronjob management.

# **Plugin: CronRefresh**

This cron plugin integrates the automated clean-up process. It cleans up the database tables s\_core\_log, s\_emarketing\_lastarticles, s\_search\_statistics and is therefore important for good performance.

Further information can be found in the article System - Cronjobs

# **Plugin: Advanced Menu**

Some also call it Drop-Down / Mega Menu - that means the menu box that appears when hovering over the main categories. This plugin activates the function which is deactivated by default.

More information can be found in the article Plugin Advanced Menu

# **Plugin: Notification**

Would you like to give your customers the opportunity to be informed about new stock when items are not available? Then you need this plugin, and the activated option "e-mail notification" in the respective article. The function looks like this:



Further information can be found in the article Create Products - E-Mail Notification

# **Plugin: TagCloud**

This plugin integrates a tag cloud into the frontend. The function is very controversial from a SEO point of view and should therefore first be checked by you.

```
Artikelmit Tex7 Hauptartikel Artikelmit Hauptartikel Hauptartikel Hauptartikel Hauptartikel Hauptartikel Variantenartike Tex19
Hauptartikel Artikelmit Hauptartikel Hauptartikel Hauptartikel
```

Further information about SEO can be found in the Shopware SEO Guide.

# **Plugin: Debug**

This plugin is used to provide additional debug variables. We have described debugging in detail in our developer documentation in the article Debugging Shopware. There you will also find the functionality of the debug plugin.

# **Plugin: Shipping Restriction**

This plugin allows you to block individual countries for deliveries in order to comply with the new EU Geoblocking Directive. A free text field under Basic **Settings > Shop Settings > Countries** allows you to define whether a country is also available as a delivery country. As of Shopware 5.5.3, this function is already included in the core and the plugin is no longer required.

Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

# Configuration

After installing the plugin you find a new free text field at **Configuration > Basic settings > Shop settings > Countries**. To see the field you click on the button for free text fields (1) and there find the option "**Allow as shipping country**:" (2) to enable or disable a country for shipping.



When you deactivate this checkbox and save the configuration the customer will get an information about countries not available for shipping when he changes his address in the account or the checkout.

∧ • Osterrei	that the following countries are not supplied: ch t one of these countries, you will not be able to	complete the order.
Private customer		~
Mr	~	
Shopware		
Shopware		
Ebbinghoff, 10		
48624	Schöppingen	
Deutschland		~
The fields marked v	vith * are required	

If the customer still chooses one of this restricted countries in the address for shipping he will get another information that a shipment in this country is not possible in the checkout and the button for the finishing of an order will be hidden.

r Shopware Shopware	Add different shipping address
abinghoff, 10	
3624 Schöppingen	
sterreich	
The selected country is not available for	
shipping	
anihhu 0	
Change address	

# Individualise texts

The shown information texts are defined in the snippets and you can change those at **Configuration > Snippets > frontend > address > index**.

The snippets have the names "CountryNotAvailableEditor", "CountryNotAvailableEditorInfo" and "CountryNotAvailableForShipping".

# **Plugin: AboCommerce**

Using **AboCommerce** you are able to offer subscriptions of variable intervals and durations for individual items in your shop. AboCommerce this way provides additional means to improve your customer retention. You can set incentives for subscribing to your items by introducing special rewards or discounts to those customers committing themselves to projected purchases.

This trust of course has to be valued. Use the included, optional discount functions to reward your customers. This way both sides can profit from the abo model. The account of the order is also done in intervals. This means the customer does not have to pay for the whole abo in advance but will get the bill in defined timeframes. This is important because since the version 2.2.0 it is possible to create abos without a previously defined enddate. For this to work you only have to define a cancellation period.

### AboCommerce in the backend

# Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

### **Definition of payments**

After completing the initial installation you will then have to define payment methods to be available in your shop. This is particularly important as subscriptions require the implementation of *recurring payments*. Your preferred payment method should therefore be able to support this kind of payment. To define a payment method, open the module **Marketing > AboCommerce > Payment metans** and drag the desired payment methods to the right side of the window.

AboCommerce uses recurring payments, keep in mind, that your payment method must support those! PayPal e.g. is capable of performing recurring payments. However you will need to have the feature activated by PayPal first. After successful activation you just need to change the PayPal option "Billing agreements" to "active".

Recurring payments with PayPal are only possible with the Shopware Plugin PayPal Express! It is not possible to use any implementation of Paypal Plus in combination with AboCommerce.

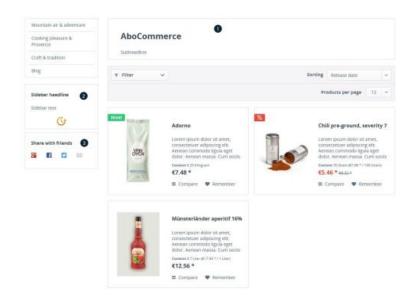
Selected payment means	
Selected payment means	
PapPal	
22%	
Prepayment	
•	
	Prepayment

If you fail to unlock payment methods for AboCommerce, orders will be processed using the fallback payment method. That is why you should, by all means, define a fallback payment method that supports recurring payments.

### **Basic settings**

In the backend access the plugin via **Marketing > AboCommerce** and click the tab **Settings**. Here you can set basic settings for the plugin e.g. for the subscription's listing in **www.yourshop.com/AboCommerce**.

Recurring orders   Use current product price   Use current product price   Oucher setting   Alter vanders with subscriptions   Satheatline:   Sat	oCommerce		88
tise ourset product price:  Voucher setting  Voucher setting  Alser vouchers with subscriptions:  Eathour  Eathour  Eathour  Stabbar  Stab	annest autocryptures Saturcapture New	Pajoret mant Setza	
Voccher setting Alleer vescheren wih nebecirptioner	Recurring orders		
Atter waschers with subscriptions  Testino Stathastine	Use current product price:		0
Bannar Handher: Anocomenna Sabhaadhee: Eubeadhee Sidebar Headhee: Sidebar headhee Sabhar headhee Sharing Facebooki C Google Maa: C Nuttor: C	Voucher setting		
AddConneror           Solobariter:         Subscripter           Solobariter:         Subscripter           Feedboor:         Solobariter           Solobariter:         Solobariter	Allow vouchers with subscriptions:	•	
Subbasilier         Subtractive           Sidebar         Interactive           Headbare:         Soletar headtive           Soletar headtive         Soletar headtive           Youtterin         Image: Soletar headtive	Bander		
Sidebar Meadbar: Stetar heatine Text: Statur (set and set and	Headline:	AbsCammerce	
Headitive: Text: Sideter teal Sharing Facebook Google Plas: Twitter:	Sathheadline:	2shbeadhe	•
Teat: Sharing Facebook Google Plan: Twitter:	Sidebar		
Sharing Facebooki Twitteri	Headline:	Sidebar headline	0
Facebooki  Geogle Plan: Vitteri Vitteri	Teut	Sideber Ibil	•
Google Plan:   Twitter:  Twitter:	Sharing		
Twitter:	Facebooki	•	
	Google Plus:		
tmat:	Twitten		
	čmai:	V	



- Use current product price: With this option active, the most current item price will be used for generating follow-up orders. If the item price changes after buying a subscription the new, now current price is used instead of the price displayed while buying the subscription. Note that price changes after buying a subscription can be legally critical, especially if prices rise. That's why this option is deactivated by default.
- Allow vouchers with subscriptions: This allows customers to cash vouchers at ordering a subscription. Vouchers will only be considered for the first order of the subscription.
- Banner (1): This setting allows you to design the subscription's listing which you can access via www.yourshop.com/AboCommerce.
- Sidebar (2): The information filled in here will be displayed in the sidebar on the left.
- Sharing (3): This activates options for sharing via social media.

#### Creating a subscription

Open an item's details section in the backend and switch to the tab **AboCommerce**. This is where you can make all required settings and start selling subscription items in your own shop.

Kem datalis : Top Produkt			800
Benard Courses for	oral (Vacanta)	erten Consumer Ditte Danks Bernann	Texture / Andrewson
Enable subscription Inner you have the option of of Deable subscriptions Exchance subscription item:	Activating this applic	ens for a fixed weight of lone. Etherghten poor resultancing with establish outbories to order this deni pe a subscription, perchanal segrected, test only on part of a subscription.	pour culturer Ay offering discussion on addaception particulars
Solars Downste	ga sian bie Novet Name. J	r goose suffrigs such as the exclusion of segments can be foo	of in the Bubecosteine method under the meno dam Malifating
Subscription onlar numberi	BALLONG ABO		
Mir. dolivery interval:	2	+	
Max. delivery interval:	4	*	
Mis. datation	1	*	
Max. charation:	24	4	
Crolless subscription:			
United:	Avabating of t	in subscription is invited to a certain number of units per week	
Mus. units per week:	34		-
Description text on detail page:			
			Concel Sine rules place

- **Enable subscriptions:** Activate or deactivate the option to buy items in a subscription.
- **Exclusive subscription item:** Activating this option, makes the item available exclusively through a subscription, the item can no longer be purchased individually.

On the tab **Settings** you can set detailed conditions for the subscription:

- **Subscription order number:** The order number of the subscription, by default the item's standard order number, will be appended by **.ABO**
- **Min. delivery interval:** Here you define the minimum length of the delivery interval. "1" e.g. enables weekly delivery, "4" restricts deliveries to once a month (every 4 weeks!).
- **Max. delivery interval:** Here you can define the largest possible delivery interval. Setting this to 1 enables only weekly subscriptions. A 4 sets the largest possible interval to once a month (every 4 weeks).

The subscription starts immediately. That is why an interval of 1 week and a duration of 10 weeks equates 11 single deliveries.

- Min. duration: This defines the duration of the subscription, e.g. 8 weeks or 12 months.
- **Max. duration:** Here you can set the maximum duration of your subscription items. After that timeperiod has expired, the subscription is terminated automatically. In this very line you can also define the operand used to calculate the above mentioned settings. You can choose whether subscriptions are based on *weekly* or *monthly* cycles.
- Endless subscription: Ticking this box enables the subscription to run until further notice. So
  subscribed customers actively have to unsubscribe in order to discontinue the service. Checking this
  deactivates the previous options on min. / max. runtimes.
- **Period of notice:** This is where you define custom periods of notice for your subscriptions. First set an arbitrary value here and specify whether the period of notice is calculated in either weeks or months. You may however ignore both these fields and simply check the box next to them.
- **Terminable anytime:** Tick this box to completely deactivate the previous options on the period of notice. This way endless subscriptions can be discontinued by your customers instantly anytime.
- Limited: This limits the max. quantity of ordered items per user and subscription.
- Max. units per week: Here you can set the max. number of items, that can be ordered in a single week. Example: If the delivery interval is set to 2 weeks and max. units per week is set to 2, the user can order max 4 pieces per interval.
- **Description text on detail page:** This description will be shown on the item's detail page.

they behalts' Adapte					62
Dates saturation					
1000 parties by 1000 par	Array a resultance in Array by A hoursards series	(Incident for measuring art plant calculation product	And Descent of Advancement (Advancement		
Town adapted and	Advances the same insides comments in traveling	Annual a halfharegeline.			
Exclusive networkship inter-	The local second is particular approach, but only as	cart of a summittee			
100 - 10					
Second Se					
	for had been when the solution in the last		and the second se		and the loss
COLUMN DISCOUT	100				
O you brief Hands					
and the second	Doctor in	Decad percent	Decent allocated.	Pres	
(reality)	a treates	28	14	132541175470525.6	
trans-	A fritain	1.16	14	A 2006425310800799 #	
10 Marcol		0.9	14	6.701083084001823.4	

The tab **Discounts** is where you set your discounts. You can choose between absolute or percentual discounts and set those for any customer group seperately and based on the delivery interval. It is also possible to define discounts for different customergroups.

#### **Overview of the created subscription items**

Inclusion in the local day	Concession and and			
tive .	Bastler .	Adve	hinne	
Conservation and a second serva-	Strate Tr.			
Children general, exceedy 7	201010			
Advent	States			

In the AboCommerce module in **Marketing > AboCommerce** you can get an overview of the subscription items by clicking the tab **subscription items**. Here you see the name and order number of the item and you see the active and exclusive state of the item's subscription. Additionally you can open the item directly.

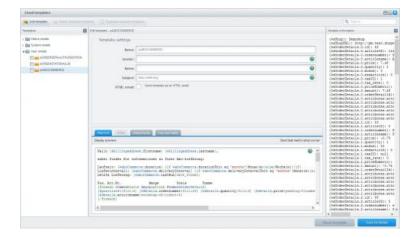
#### **Overview of all currently running subscriptions**

Server and the large									
law.	Canner .	Colorer great	Destine	Celvery conval.	(Depend	livelae	Lasi menjari.	Stary Set	
Advect PAG 201-2	Second Second Second	inter .	12 marts	21/1000	2110216	16110216		2004/0211	YENA O
Monachine apartic 175.		Send .	20 vinate	10000	2140244	349/314		-44000001	Y MAO
(intra-prior) second (	der steller sons i se	Delad	22 Berlin	10 miles	12-000-6	\$181(\$167		271140348	YTHI O

In the AboCommerce module, accessible via the main menu **Marketing > AboCommerce**, you can survey all running subscription items on the tab **Discount subscriptions**. Besides that you can open the user or item management, delete a subscription, open the last order of a subscription or trigger the next follow-up order, regardless of the delivery interval.

By clicking **Show only due items** only those items are displayed that need to be shipped next. Here you can check all due orders and **Execute due orders** all at once using a batch process. Already executed orders can be found in the order module in **Customers > Order**.

#### **Email template**



The AboCommerce plugin comes with a seperate email template for follow-up orders. You can find this template in the email template module in the main menue: **Configuration > Email templates > User emails**, there the template is named **sABOCOMMERCE**. By clicking on **Variable information** you can examine all available variables in this template.

#### Cronjobs

AboCommerce can trigger follow-up orders by making use of a cronjob. On triggering the cronjob all due orders will be executed. The cronjob is named **AboCommerce-orders** and can be found in the cronjob overview in **Configuration > Basic settings > System > Cronjobs**. To trigger a cronjob, the plugin **Cron** has to be installed and set as active. Further information on cronjobs can be obtained through the wiki article on Cronjobs. For performance reasons a cron can only create 5 orders per call.

# AboCommerce in the frontend

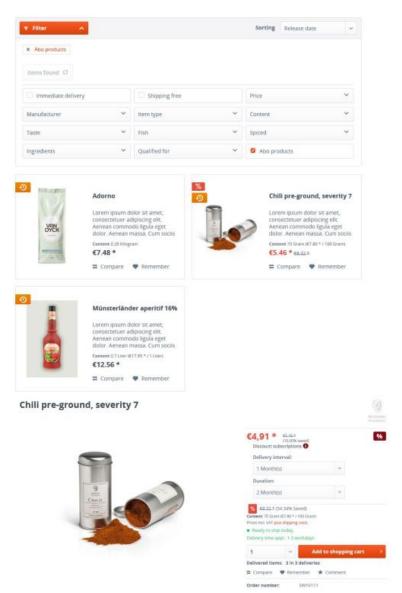
After all settings were made in the backend, you can find your subscription items in the different listings containing those items.

### Listing

Overview	Created at:	Order number:	Delivery interval:	Expirati	on date:	Action
Addresses Payment methods	27/10/2016 03:04 PM	20014	Every 2 Week(s)	8 Dec 20	16	Decails
Orders	Item:		liters ru	mber:	Quantity:	Sum
trotant downloads	Adorno Filter 250 g		SWI011	4	28	€17.80
My subscriptions Wish list	Subscription discount		5W1011	4,480	tx.	-60.75
🕒 Lagout	Duration: Delivery Interval: Next delivery:	6 Week(s) Every 2 Week(s) 10 Nov 2016			Shipping costs: Total amount:	43.9 620.9
	Shipping eddress:				Change	shipping address

The subscription items are tagged with a badge in the listing, helping you and your customers to simply spot the subscription items in your shop. Additionally the listing can be filtered for subscription items.

#### Subscription detail page



Like described in the settings there are two ways you can offer subscriptions. First there are the subscription-only items (exclusive) and the subscription-optional items (not exclusive). The later can be bought once without taking a subscription, the former are only available through a continuous subscription. Furthermore you can monitor the defined discounts here and set gradual discounts for your subscription items. Additionally customers can set a delivery interval and the duration of the subscription here.

#### Cart / Checkout

Adorno

	○ €7.48* Single delivery				
2		uga 20% saveti Ioris 🕕			96
1	Duration	Discou	nt (in	0	
	From t Week(s)	60.15 *			
	From 5-Vineskipa	60.37 *			
8	Fram 9 Week(s)	60.75			
	Delivery interval:				
1	2 Week(s)		÷		
	Duration:				
	2 Week(s)		×		
	Contarts 0.25 Kington K Prices met Wit plus shippe Suited for:				
	Please select.			*	
	Content:				
	Perature behalit			4	
	1. ~	Add to shopp			

At the checkout customers get detailed information on every item they are subscribed to. Information on the interval, duration, price per delivery and overall price are available.

Position information can be extended using the **Template for essential characteristics** option in the backend basic settings. This makes it possible, for example, to display the basic price discounted by a subscription. This works similar as described in <u>checkout</u>:

#### 

#### Account

Profile	Created at:	Order number:	<b>Delivery interval</b> :	Expire	tion date:	Action
Addresses Payment methods	96/12/2018 07/07	20004	Every 2 Week(s)	20 Dec	2018	Details
Orders	Item:		ltem nu	mbers	Quantity:	Sum
instant downloads	Curry Gourmet Box		5W1009		1.94	630.00
My subscriptions Welk list	Subscription discount	i.	5W1009	9.480	.14	-€1.50
Not Shopware? Logost	Duration: Delivery interval: Next delivery:	2 Week00 Every 2 Week(s) 30 Dec 2018			Shipping costs: Total amount:	63.9 632.4
	Shipping address:					_

In the account, every user can get an overview of his subscriptions and take a look at detailed information like interval, duration, next delivery, sum and so on. Your customers can also change the shipping address for the following deliveries here.

# **Advanced Cart**

The Advanced Cart Premium Plugin for Shopware allows shopping carts to be saved for extended lengths of time. These shopping carts can be viewed as "Wishlists" in the "My account" area and listed as either private or as public, allowing others to see them via direct link regardless of whether they are registered in your shop. In addition, these wishlists can be sent to friends via email, or shared on Facebook, Google or Twitter. Shared shopping carts can then be taken over with a single click, or alternatively individual items can also be selected.

# Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

# **Plugin configuration**

The plugin can be configured directly in the Plugin Manager or through **Configuration > Basic settings > Additional settings > Advanced Cart**.

Session basket save time in days:	365 1	A	6
Clear existing basket on wishlist restore:	Yes 2		0
Share via mail:	Na 3	•	0
Recommend article combinations:	Yes 👩	•	•
Replace default wishlist:	Vea 5		6
Facebook App-ID:	6		6
Facebook Likea:	No 🕖	•	0
facebook Comments:	No B		6

- Session basket save time in days (1): In this option set the day after which shopping carts should be deleted.
- **Clear existing basket on wishlist restore (2):** With this option you can set whether the shopping cart will be emptied after the customer loads his wishlist into the shopping cart.
- Share via email (3): If this option is activated, it will be possible to share wishlists via email from the *My Account* interface. This function is disabled by default. Before activating this function, be sure to check the relevant legal provisions of the country.
- Recommend article combinations (4): This option allows you to offer your customers the
  opportunity to suggest article combinations. Customers viewing an article detail page receive an
  article slider which includes other articles of a wishlist.



- Replace default wishlist (5): Selecting this will replace the wishlist with the current notepad.
- Facebook App-ID (6): If you wish to use features such as the "Like" or "Comment" functions, you must first enter your Facebook App-ID here.
- Facebook Likes (7): This activates the option to "Like" articles in the shop on Facebook.
- Facebook Comments (8): Activating this option enables Facebook Comments.

### Wishlists in the frontend

#### **Creating wishlists**

To create a wish list, go to *My account* and then **Wishlists (1)**. Next, enter a **name (2)** and then click on **Create wishlist (3)** to save it.

Wishlists				
Disate your own wishings a	end share them with your fri	inds.		
Create wishlist				
harrie for winters."				
				Create wishin

#### Adding articles to wishlists

To add an article to the wishlist, enter the article number or name in the **Search box (1)**. Then click the **Add (2)** button. The article should now appear in your wishlist.

R Public Nitil can be found by all as long as this function is active.		
Link for sharing: wishksupublic/id/Sb58585/722	spinnwGazWZPhrputzxmIPWfUnjt/GqRqcqSRWK	
f 🗾 8		
terre and a second s		
sw10330 1		Add
(SAR) (ACRET A & REAMINA (SWITCH 30)	Inter	t all items into cart
(SR) (ACKET AL2 BERNINK (SWI10130.1)		
(SW) (ACKET POLIBORIUM (SWITI130.2)		
(SRE) ACKET PER BURNING CHITOTIOLO	Preis	
(SAQ_ACKET FUT BEENING (WHOT30.4)		
(SHI), MORET HIZ BERNINA (SWI10130.5)	€149.95*	×
Order number: 5W10001	# Compare	
	0	
Quantity 3 Pylet		
Reactly to unity incluy. Detwory town appr. 1-3 withdraws		
recovery race with 1-3 warmings		Add to cert
3L [MI] JACKET LA GRAVE L Green	£499.95*	×
Manufacturer: ORTOVOX	= Compare	
Order number: SW10132.7		
Quantity 1 v		
Ready to ship today.		
Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays		

### Managing wishlists

Here you can rename and delete (1) wishlists

	1 Artikel) Private wishing - list sin't available publicly and is only visible to	ha	
El Public Ists c	an be found by all as long as this function is active.		
leki			Hinzufügen
		inse	rt all items into cart
Artikel		Preis	
	3L [MI] JACKET LA GRAVE	€499.95*	×
/m	Manufacturer: ORTOVOX Order number: SW10132	III Compare	
	Quantity 1 ~		
	Ready to ship today. Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays		Add to cart 3
/ Rename	x Delete	- Charles	t all items into cart

#### Adding articles to the shopping cart

Here you have the opportunity to put all articles of the wish list in the shopping cart. For this, a single click is enough.

If you so click one the respective articles, only these will be added from your wish list into the shopping cart.

		Hinzufügen
	() Insert	all items into cart
cikel	Preis	
VENOM VARIO S	€149.95*	×
Manufacturer: LEK) Order number: 3W10001	🛱 Compare	
Quantity TPair ~		
Ready to ship today.		
Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays		Add to cart 3
3L [MI] JACKET LA GRAVE	€499.95*	×
Manufacturer: ORTOVDX Order number: SW10132	I Compare	
Quantity 1		
Ready to ship today.		
Delivery rane appr. 1-3 workdays		Add to cart

### Making wishlists public

Here we'll show you the different options when publishing a wishlist. To make a wishlist public, simply check the box as indicated in the image below.

Public lists can be found by all as king as this function is active.	0
nk for sharing:	uble/id/3e5G39Eg/ZZm2kneWGetWZPbrputzem#WU.lnjtGqRqcq5RWK
f 🔽 8	
3 antois name in crost humon	Hinteflagen

#### **Sharing links**

Here you will find the link of the wishlist for sharing with friends. The link is only accessible when the list is published. If the hook is later deleted, the link is no longer available.

#### Via Facebook

Once the wishlist is made public, you an use this option.

#### Via Twitter

This option is for sharing over Twitter.

#### Via Google+

And here is the option for sharing over Google+.

#### Wishlists in the shopping cart

When you are at the cart you can **load a saved wishlist (1)** to the cart or **save your existing cart as a wishlist (2)**. To do this you only have to type the wishlist name in the text field and click the > - Button

		Load wishlist	Save as wishlist	
		Simply fill the shopping cart using content from a saved withfat - including the previously chosen quantities.	Save your shopping cart as a with list, s all your items conveniently in one place you add to this with list later, but also is your social network and make purchase click.	Not only can hare it with
		Load saved wishtist 1 ~	These reasons of the sectors.	
			Checkour	C.
Product		Quantity	Price per unit	Sum
Ŵ	3L (MI) JACKET LA GRAVE L Green Order number SW10132.7 Reaty to thip today. Defining sme.appr. 1-3 workdays	1 ~	6493.05* 644	99.95° )
1	VENOM VARIO S Order number SW10003	1 -	K149.95 <sup>4</sup> <b>K1</b> 4	IR.85° )

When the option "*Clear existing basket on wishlist restore*" is activated in the plugin settings, only the articles from the wishlist are loaded. The separate articles will be deleted.

# **Advanced Promotion Suite**

The plugin Advanced Promotion Suite allows you to create discounts and campaigns for various occasions in your online shop.

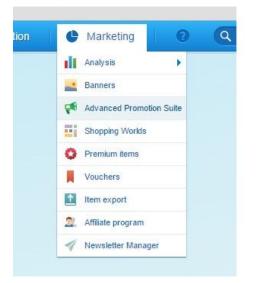
Bring classic and effective campaigns from stationary retail to your online shop, such as:

- "Buy 3 pay 2"
- "20% off everything except for..."
- "For every purchase over XX € receive product Y for free"
- "Purchase 2 items and receive the second item 50% off"

The following documentation clarifies the possibilities of this plugin and how it works in practice.

### **Advanced Promotion Suite backend**

The module can be found under the menu point *Marketing* > *Advanced Promotion Suite*.



When you open the module, you will first see an overview of all currently applied promotions. If this is your first time opening the module, the promotion list will appear empty.

🔾 Add Bern 🔘 Carele a							Q. Investor			
Nave	Priority	Promotion mode	Active	Value	Active from	Active to	Orders			
Day X get V free		Cart Percentage discount		5%				0	0/	0
5% horn 100 Euro	4	Cart Percentage discount		5%				0	0/	0

In the promotion list, you have the following available parameters:

- Name: displays the assigned name of the particular promotion
- **Priority:** displays the priority setting of each promotion (the higher the priority, the more likely it is to be processed)
- Promotion mode: this indicates which setting has been selected for each promotion
- Active: shows whether or not the promotion is active
- Value: the value assigned to the discount depending on the mode selected, this is absolute or percentage
- Active from: the promotion's starting date
- Active to: the promotion's end date
- Orders: indicates the number of orders made for the promotion

Similar to other Shopware modules, these parameters can be sorted manually. To change the sorting, click on the parameter and drag to reposition it within the headline list. Using the search box, you have the option of searching for a specific promotion that has already been created. **Note:** the following values can be edited directly in the overview simply by double-clicking on the entry in the list:

- Active
- Value
- Active from
- Active to

												80
O Add Seen O Delete a	Exelected								0	L Search		
Name	Priority	Pranotice mode	Active		Value	Active trum		Active to		Orders		
Buy X get Y free	0	Cart Percentage discount			5 %						0 0,	10
			7	5			面					
			Lipstat		Careri							

The following functions are available in the overview:

- Add item: click this button to add a promotion
- **Delete a promotion:** click this icon to delete a promotion completely from the overview
- Edit a promotion: this icon opens the corresponding promotion editor
- Duplicate a promotion: creates a copy of the respective promotion

# **Promotion configuration**

You can define the conditions of your promotion in the configuration area (i.e. the discount or if the campaign offers free shipping, etc.). Note that several areas can be set within the range of modes. Some fields do not apply for every mode, and therefore are not displayed in particular configurations. Below is an example of the different modes and settings. Here you will find a helpful tutorial on how to create a promotion.

#### **Promotion mode:**

The promotion mode is the first setting required when creating a new promotion. The following modes are available:

- Shopping cart: absolute discount
- Shopping cart: percentage discount
- Products: absolute discount
- Products: percentage discount

- Buy X get Y for free
- Free items
- Free article bundle
- Free shipping

THE OTHER					
Promotion reader.			0	Autor	
Same of the Propulsion	Straug out another mount			Order summer	
Show bedge in tratings	Stopping cell percentings discourt Presiums absolute discourte			Radge link:	
show bedge in failing.	Products, proceedings (includ)		•	tanda ana	
Donet	they 3, get V for these				
	Page down.		-	free stageting:	
Tales:	1.	1	0	For supprise	
Proventive configurat	ion .				
Man simple per seart	0		0	Allowine weather:	0
Car sely Ris promition			•	Rafer production raises to product values	0
Discourt assignment					
Decourt available for	44 protects		•	Max chaige per certi	÷.
traing					

The following sections provide individual descriptions of each possible mode:

Shopping	cart	modes
----------	------	-------

Conception of the local division of the loca	And the second se				
last seman					
Turnelies perity	Tracky or more stand		Antes		0
	and a state of the		Owner summary	( + the set)	
These that age in taking	- 13	•	Televen.	1 DBP Let Bernet	0.0
Discard					
Vehici		0.0	The starting		0
reactive config.	AND CO.				
	1.1.1	- 0	Alles er rentiter		0
the cycly first presented	-0	0			
Obcord and pro-					
Checkent problems for	e: est protocola	- 0			
Short description					
	I form + A + D H # .	and the late of the late of			0.0
hen o					
	1412 214 Karlon (2000)		fun (Armana am		
	a de la defensión de la complete de	hanna antar i da	hen Alemania carb	tig o mai ann	
		Second collected in the	lan, /lanana com	ng se mad ann :	
Detailed provide				Ng sa waki waki (	••
Detailed provide				10 to 100 cm	••
Detailed provide				70 x 100 cm ;	••
Detailed provide				N) + 100 off	•
positi di				11( - sei ce	••
Contract Second	a E factor + A + in in E		,		•
Contract Second			,		
Dealed second	a E factor + A + in in E		,		•
Annual constants			,		
Sense Preside generative results Dealer description (Construction) Faile of Sense Se			,		
Sense de renteries de la constante de la const			n an		
Annale Brender Deriche Brought Deriche Brought Deriche Brought Dericher Annale Brought Machen Machen Dericher Gesetter	a 2 Textus (+) (A (+) III (B (E ( ) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+		,		
Annale Brennen Derichte Brennen Annale Brennen Frieder Annale Brennen Herter Annale Brennen Herter Brennen Frie			n an		
Annale Present Contract and Contract Contract and Contract and Contract and Contract Contract and Contract	a 2 Textus (+) (A (+) III (B (E ( ) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+) (+		for American		
Annale Present Contract and Contract Contract and Contract and Contract and Contract Contract and Contract	a E texture of A + B B B E E international and a second		for American		
Decide Beauty B.	a 2 (notine ) = (A (=) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) = ( () (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) () (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) () (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) () (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) () (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) () (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (0) (		for American		

There are two different shopping cart modes – absolute and percentage – and both have the following available options:

- Name of the Promotion: assigns a name to your promotion
- Active: placing a tick in the box activates the promotion, removing the tick deactivates it

- **Order number:** defines the order number that appears when placed in the shopping cart
- Show badge in listing: if set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion

For the promotion modes Free Shipping, Shopping Cart: Absolute Discount and Shopping Cart: Percentage Discount, no badges will be displayed in the listing.

- Badge text: If set, this text will be shown on the product badge in the listing
- Value: value of the discount depending on the mode this will be absolute or percentage
- Free shipping: defines whether or not the promotion is offered with free delivery
- Max usage per user: determines how many times each customer can use the promotion, if he tries to use it more times than allowed, he'll get a message in the cart
- Allow no voucher: when active, no other voucher can be used in combination with this promotion. If
  inactive, a maximum of 1 voucher can be redeemed in parallel with this promotion in the shopping
  cart.
- **Use only this promotion:** when this option is activated, no other promotion can be used.
- Discount available for: here you select whether the promotion is valid globally or for main products/variants. This is important because in the product rules you cannot select a variant (see below).
- Short description: enter a description that will appear on the product detail page. Here you can
  also work with variables the available variables are displayed directly below this field. At the tips &
  tricks we show you some examples
- **Detailed description:** depending on the device being used, this description will appear either offcanvas or in a modal box. This description can be used as a disclaimer.
- Activate promotion with existing voucher: defines that the promotion will activate with an assigned voucher.

The voucher is used only for activation, the voucher conditions do not apply.

- **Time based promotion activation:** here you can define the specific time the promotion begins and ends.
- **Exclude promotions with lower priority:** when activated, promotions with a lower priority will be excluded from the shopping cart.
- **Priority of this promotion:** defines the priority of the promotion. The higher the priority, the more likely it will be considered.

If you let the "Badge Text" field empty, the default text "Campain" appears in the badges.

#### Discount available for works following a defined logic. To briefly explain: :

By variant > 3x the same variant, After master product > 3x the same product, regardless of variant, All products > products from the same campaign.

#### **Product modes**

There are two different product modes – absolute and percentage – and both have the following available options:

- Name of the Promotion: assigns a name to your promotion
- Active: placing a tick in the box activates the promotion, removing the tick deactivates it
- Order number: defines the order number that appears when placed in the shopping cart
- **Show badge in listing:** if set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion
- Badge text: If set, this text will be shown on the product badge in the listing
- Value: value of the discount depending on the mode this will be absolute or percentage
- Free shipping: defines whether or not the promotion is offered with free delivery
- **Discount display:** Specifies how the discount is to be displayed in the shopping basket in the storefront. This can be grouped, position based or direct. Grouped means that another position is listed as a discount for all discounted articles. Position based displays an additional position for each discounted article. "Direct" does not add another item, but deducts the discount directly from the discounted article.
- Max usage per user: determines how many times each customer can use the promotion, if he tries to use it more times than allowed, he'll get a message in the cart
- Allow no voucher: when active, no other voucher can be used in combination with this promotion. If
  inactive, a maximum of 1 voucher can be redeemed in parallel with this promotion in the shopping
  cart.
- **Refer promotion rules to product rules:** With this option the product rules will referred to the cart rules. **Example:** You have a cart rule *Total price* > 50 and a product rule *Supplier name* = XY. When the option is disabled, these rules will be evaluated seperately, the cart must be > 50 and at least contain 1 product from supplier XY, no matter what it's price is. If you activate this option, Shopware checks that all products from supplier XY have a total price of > 50. Using this you can link both rulesets and start completely new types of promotions.
- Use only this promotion: when this option is activated, no other promotion can be used
- Discount available for: here you select whether the promotion is valid globally or for main products/variants. This is important because in the product rules you cannot select a variant (see below).
- Max usage per cart: defines how often this promotion may be used per shopping cart
- Scaling: here you set how many products must be purchased in order to activate the promotion (i.e. "Buy 5, get 10% discount").
- Short description: enter a description that will appear on the product detail page. Here you can
  also work with variables the available variables are displayed directly below this field. At the tips &
  tricks we show you some examples
- **Detailed description:** depending on the device being used, this description will appear either offcanvas or in a modal box. This description can be used as a disclaimer.
- Activate promotion with existing voucher: defines that the promotion will activate with an assigned voucher.

The voucher is used only for activation, the voucher conditions do not apply.

- **Time based promotion activation:** here you can define the specific time the promotion begins and ends.
- **Exclude promotions with lower priority:** when activated, promotions with a lower priority will be excluded from the shopping cart.

• **Priority of this promotion:** defines the priority of the promotion. The higher the priority, the more likely it will be considered.

#### **Discount available for** works following a defined logic. To briefly explain: :

By variant > 3x the same variant, After master product > 3x the same product, regardless of variant, All products > products from the same campaign.

#### Buy X get Y for free

In this mode, you can add an additional item to an order for free when a certain value is reached. For example, "Buy 6 candles, get the 6th for free" or "Buy 5 candles, get 6" – the customer places 6 candles in their basket, but only pays for 5. The following settings are available for this mode:

- Name of the Promotion: assigns a name to your promotion
- Active: placing a tick in the box activates the promotion, removing the tick deactivates it
- Order number: defines the order number that appears when placed in the shopping cart
- Show badge in listing: if set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion
- Badge bext: If set, this text will be shown on the product badge in the listing
- Buy X: defines how many items must be purchased in order for the promotion to activate
- Get Y for free: defines how many items are included as free
- Free shipping: defines whether or not the promotion is offered with free delivery
- Discount display: Specifies how the discount is to be displayed in the shopping basket in the storefront. This can be grouped, position based or direct. Grouped means that another position is listed as a discount for all discounted articles. Position based displays an additional position for each discounted article. "Direct" does not add another item, but deducts the discount directly from the discounted article.
- **Max usage per user:** determines how many times each customer can use the promotion, if he tries to use it more times than allowed, he'll get a message in the cart
- Allow no voucher: when active, no other voucher can be used in combination with this promotion. If inactive, a maximum of 1 voucher can be redeemed in parallel with this promotion in the shopping cart.
- **Refer promotion rules to product rules:** With this option the product rules will referred to the cart rules. **Example:** You have a cart rule *Total price* > 50 and a product rule *Supplier name* = XY. When the option is disabled, these rules will be evaluated seperately, the cart must be > 50 and at least contain 1 product from supplier XY, no matter what it's price is. If you activate this option, Shopware checks that all products from supplier XY have a total price of > 50. Using this you can link both rulesets and start completely new types of promotions.
- Use only this promotion: when this option is activated, no other promotion can be used
- Short description: enter a description that will appear on the product detail page. Here you can
  also work with variables the available variables are displayed directly below this field. At the tips &
  tricks we show you some examples
- **Detailed description:** depending on the device being used, this description will appear either offcanvas or in a modal box. This description can be used as a disclaimer.

• Activate promotion with existing voucher: defines that the promotion will activate with an assigned voucher.

The voucher is used only for activation, the voucher conditions do not apply.

- **Time based promotion activation:** here you can define the specific time the promotion begins and ends.
- **Exclude promotions with lower priority:** when activated, promotions with a lower priority will be excluded from the shopping cart.
- **Priority of this promotion:** defines the priority of the promotion. The higher the priority, the more likely it will be considered.

#### Free items

Use this mode to add a particular free item to an order (i.e. "Free x item for purchases made over 100 Euro). The following settings are available:

- Name of the Promotion: assigns a name to your promotion
- Active: placing a tick in the box activates the promotion, removing the tick deactivates it
- Order number: defines the order number that appears when placed in the shopping cart
- Show badge in listing: if set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion
- Badge text: If set, this text will be shown on the product badge in the listing
- Free shipping: defines whether or not the promotion is offered with free delivery
- Free item: here you can define the free items
- **Max usage per user:** determines how many times each customer can use the promotion, if he tries to use it more times than allowed, he'll get a message in the cart
- **Use only this promotion:** when this option is activated, no other promotion can be used
- Allow no voucher: when active, no other voucher can be used in combination with this promotion. If
  inactive, a maximum of 1 voucher can be redeemed in parallel with this promotion in the shopping
  cart.
- **Refer promotion rules to product rules:** With this option the product rules will referred to the cart rules. **Example:** You have a cart rule *Total price* > 50 and a product rule *Supplier name* = XY. When the option is disabled, these rules will be evaluated seperately, the cart must be > 50 and at least contain 1 product from supplier XY, no matter what it's price is. If you activate this option, Shopware checks that all products from supplier XY have a total price of > 50. Using this you can link both rulesets and start completely new types of promotions.
- Discount available for: here you select whether the promotion is valid globally or for main products/variants. This is important because in the product rules you cannot select a variant (see below).
- Max usage per cart: defines how often this promotion may be used per shopping cart
- **Scaling:** here you set how many products must be purchased in order to activate the promotion (i.e. "Buy 5, get 10% discount").

- Short description: enter a description that will appear on the product detail page. Here you canalso work with variables the available variables are displayed directly below this field. At the tips & tricks we show you some examples
- **Detailed description:** depending on the device being used, this description will appear either offcanvas or in a modal box. This description can be used as a disclaimer.
- Activate promotion with existing voucher: defines that the promotion will activate with an assigned voucher.

The voucher is used only for activation, the voucher conditions do not apply.

- **Time based promotion activation:** here you can define the specific time the promotion begins and ends.
- **Exclude promotions with lower priority:** when activated, promotions with a lower priority will be excluded from the shopping cart.
- **Priority of this promotion:** defines the priority of the promotion. The higher the priority, the more likely it will be considered.

**Discount available for** works following a defined logic. To briefly explain: :

By variant > 3x the same variant, After master product > 3x the same product, regardless of variant, All products > products from the same campaign.

In the shopping cart, the free item will always appear with its full price plus a separate voucher of equal value.

#### Free article bundle

In contrast to the free article mode, where only one article can be selected as a free gift, it is possible to select several free gifts in the free article bundle. Example: "When buying article X, article Y gets a free addition. If article X is purchased more than once, the free article can be selected as many times as required".

The following settings can be made here:

- Name of the promotion: Assigns a name for the promotion
- Active: Switches the promotion active
- Order number: Defines the order number with which the promotion is placed in the shopping basket
- Show badge in the article listing: Activate this option to display the badge for this promotion
- **Badge text**: Here you can enter your own text for the article badge. This text will be displayed in the article listing, if the option is activated
- **Show note in shopping cart**: If you activate this option, a note will be displayed in the shopping cart with information about the conditions of the promotion
- Free article badge text: This text will be displayed as a badge on the free article in the shopping cart
- **Listing view Buy button**: Define how the button should be displayed in the listing. You can choose whether only the detail or buy button should be shown, or both buttons.
- Free shipping: Defines if the order is free of shipping costs when the promotion is started
- Free articles: Here you can define the free article(s)

- **Max usage per customer**: Determines how often a customer can take advantage of the promotion, if he tries to exceed this number, a corresponding note is displayed in the shopping cart
- Only use this promotion: If active, no further promotion will be allowed
- Do not accept a voucher: If active, no other voucher can be redeemed besides the promotion
- **Refer promotion rules to product rules**: With this option, product rules and shopping cart rules are linked together. Example: You have defined a shopping cart rule Total Price > 50 and a product rule Manufacturer Name = XY. If the option is deactivated, the rules are evaluated separately, so the shopping cart must be > 50 and there must be at least 1 product from manufacturer XY, no matter how much it costs. If this option is now activated, it is checked that all items from manufacturer XY exceed a total value of 50. So you can link these rules and start completely new actions again.
- **Discount valid for**: Here you can set whether your promotion should only apply to the regular articles/variants or globally. This is interesting because you cannot choose variants in the product rules (see below). The selection works according to the following logic: All articles > 3 articles from the scope of the promotion, main article > 3x the same product, no matter which variant, variant > 3x the same variant.
- **Graduation**: Here you set how many products must be purchased for the promotion to take effect (example: buy 5, get 5% discount)
- Max. usage per shopping cart: Here you define how often this promotion may be used in a shopping cart (example: "Buy 5, get 5% discount" can only be used once per order)
- Short description: Here you can enter a description, which will be shown on the item detail page. You can also work with the available variables shown below the field. In the tips & tricks we show you some examples.
- **Detailed description**: This description is displayed in the frontend in a modal box or in the OffCanvas, depending on the device, and is intended for disclaimers, for example.
- Activate promotion with existing voucher: Defines that the promotion is activated with the voucher selected here. The deposited voucher is only used for activation, the set voucher conditions do not apply.
- **Time-controlled activation**: Here you can set when the promotion should start and end.
- **Exclude promotion with lower priority**: Here you can set that other promotions, even if they would apply, are excluded at lower priority.
- **Priority of this promotion**: Defines the priority of this promotion. The higher the priority, the more likely it is to be considered.

Please note: Free articles are always added to the shopping cart in the frontend with the full article price! The discount results from the fact that a voucher with the same value is placed in the shopping basket at the same time - the article is therefore free.

#### **Free shipping**

The Free Shipping mode gives you the opportunity to create a promotion that allows you to place free shipping orders. In contrast, the free shipping option from the other modes only works in combination with a product or shopping cart discount.

• Name of the promotion: Assigns a name for the promotion

- Active: Switches the promotion active
- **Order number**: Defines the order number with which the promotion is placed in the shopping basket
- Show badge in the article listing: Activate this option to display the badge for this promotion
- **Badge text**: Here you can enter your own text for the article badge. This text will be displayed in the article listing, if the option is activated
- **Show note in shopping cart**: If you activate this option, a note will be displayed in the shopping cart with information about the conditions of the promotion
- **Listing view Buy button**: Define how the button should be displayed in the listing. You can choose whether only the detail or buy button should be shown, or both buttons.
- Free articles: Here you can define the free article(s)
- **Max usage per customer**: Determines how often a customer can take advantage of the promotion, if he tries to exceed this number, a corresponding note is displayed in the shopping cart
- Only use this promotion: If active, no further promotion will be allowed
- Do not accept a voucher: If active, no other voucher can be redeemed besides the promotion
- **Refer promotion rules to product rules**: With this option, product rules and shopping cart rules are linked together. Example: You have defined a shopping cart rule Total Price > 50 and a product rule Manufacturer Name = XY. If the option is deactivated, the rules are evaluated separately, so the shopping cart must be > 50 and there must be at least 1 product from manufacturer XY, no matter how much it costs. If this option is now activated, it is checked that all items from manufacturer XY exceed a total value of 50. So you can link these rules and start completely new actions again.
- Discount valid for: Here you can set whether your promotion should only apply to the regular articles/variants or globally. This is interesting because you cannot choose variants in the product rules (see below).
- Graduation: Here you set how many products have to be purchased for the promotion to take effect (example: Buy 5, get 5% discount)
- Max. usage per shopping cart: Here you define how often this promotion may be used in a shopping cart (example: "Buy 5, get 5% discount" can only be used once per order)
- Short description: Here you can enter a description, which will be shown on the item detail page. You can also work with the available variables shown below the field. In the tips & tricks we show you some examples.
- **Detailed description**: This description is displayed in the frontend in a modal box or in the OffCanvas, depending on the device, and is intended for disclaimers, for example.
- Activate promotion with existing voucher: Defines that the promotion is activated with the voucher selected here. The deposited voucher is only used for activation, the set voucher conditions do not apply.
- **Time-controlled activation**: Here you can set when the promotion should start and end.
- **Exclude promotion with lower priority**: Here you can set that other promotions, even if they would apply, are excluded at lower priority.
- **Priority of this promotion**: Defines the priority of this promotion. The higher the priority, the more likely it is to be considered.

### **Promotion rules**

The conditions that must be met in order to activate the promotion are defined in the promotion rules (i.e. a promotion activates when a certain shopping cart value is met / there is a particular item in the cart). Here you can select between promotional rules (shopping cart or user rules) and product rules – you are also able to combine rules for even more specific promotions. The promotion will only be active when all of the rules are met, therefore if you do not want to define product rules, select "Always true". The rules can be branched as a tree structure or combined using "AND" and "OR".

1: You can create a new rule here

2: Here you can delete and existing rule - simply select the rule and click Delete

#### **Promotion rules**

In the promotion rules, you can set shopping cart and user rules by selecting nodes or a definition. When you select a rule, you can adjust the *Rule settings* on the right side of the window. If you change the rule of a node, the left side of the tree will be displayed accordingly. You can define the following rules:

- **AND**: when all sub-rules are met if you choose this, all rules under the node must be met in order for the node to apply.
- **OR**: if one of the sub-rules are met if you choose this, it's enough if only one of the entered subrules are met.
- **Always true** when selected, this is usually always true. When only one shopping cart or product rule is defined, all of the other rules will also apply.
- Shopping cart rules when selected, you can define the following shopping cart rules:
  - Total price
  - Total net price
  - Number of products
  - Free shipping
- **User rule** when selected, you can define the following rules for users:
- Customer Stream
- Customer number
  - Customer ID
  - Payment ID
  - Customer group
  - Customer email
  - Customer: account mode
  - Customer: validation

- Payment present
- Customer shop
- Internal comment
- Salutation
- Title
- First name
- Last name
- Birthday
- Address company
- Address department
- Address salutation
- Address first name
- Address last name
- Address Tile
- Address street
- Address zip code
- Address city
- Address phone
- Address tax ID
- Billing address tax ID
- Address additional line one
- Address additional line two
- Address county
- Address state

You can create and combine any number of rules in order to perfectly control your campaign.

#### **Product rules**

The product rules behave similar to the shopping cart rules, as they can be used to more accurately control your promotion. Nevertheless, you can still use just one standalone product rule.

- **AND**: when all sub-rules are met if you choose this, all rules under the node must in order for the node to apply.
- **OR**: if one of the sub-rules are met if you choose this, it's enough if only one of the entered subrules are met.

- **Always true** when selected, this is usually always true. When only one shopping cart or product rule is defined, all of the other rules will also apply.
- Is in a Product Steam here you can choose the Product Stream that the product must be assigned to in order for the rule to apply
- Product rule the following rules can be defined for your product:
  - Order number
  - Scale price from
  - Price
  - Scale price to
  - Product name
  - Supplier name
  - Product ID
  - Main details ID
  - Manufacturer ID
  - Tax ID
  - Price group ID
  - Filter group ID
  - Short description
  - Description
  - Product is active
  - Product is a topseller
  - Product keywords
  - Product meta title
  - Product price group active
  - Attribute 1-20
  - Variant ID
  - Variant kind
  - Variant active
  - In stock
  - Min. in stock
  - Stock clearance
  - Weight
  - Width
  - Length

- Height
- EAN
- Purchasing price
- Puchase unit
- Shipping free
- Price ID
- Pseudo price
- Percentage discount
- Category ID
- Category name
- Category meta title
- Category meta keywords
- Category meta description
- Category title
- Category description
- Category is active
- Category external target

The price filter is always stated net since the result would almost never be "true" by rounding the price!

### Restrictions

In the restrictions section, you can determine whether your promotion should be restricted to specific customer groups or shops. Enter the customer groups/shops the promotion should be restricted to here.

# Settings in the plugin manager

biti tettepi Attancat	E Propersidente Bankle		893			
Q Grant.	Description					
a frankrige Angeler	Costs there presided propage is not only the star on test Tar when it eleves and researce are concerned to also be also be					
a nana	State of the second sec					
Additional sufferings	Presidenting President (President Report)	Chart through lighting.	*) *			
	Almost forer gaming and the cherchend progra-					
-						
Second Pressed in	iar.					

### **Price display**

Here you can set how the prices of the promotional items should be displayed in the listing and the detail page, you can choose between the following options

- Show nothing else This does not represent a different price.
- Show old price as new pseudo price This sets the old price as pseudo price and shows the discounted price.
- **Highlight new price only** This setting only highlights the new price, but does not display a pseudo price.

Note: This setting is always global for all active promotions. So you have to make sure that you meet the legal requirements for the display of strike prices with your promotions.

#### Special prices in the product export

When this function is active, the prices reduced by promotions of the product discount type are used in product exports. Other discount variants are not used in exports.

#### Show free articles on the order completion page

Specify whether the selection of the free article from a promotion is also possible on the order completion page. In the standard system, the selection is only made in the (off-canvas) shopping basket.

# **Step-by-Step Tutorials**

#### "20% off all items except..."

In this example, we will show you how to create a temporary "20% off all items except..." promotion. In the two screenshots below, you can see the various settings required to create such a promotion:

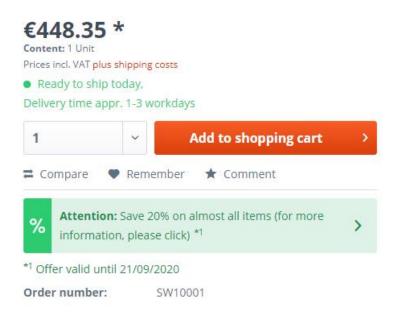
the state pro-					
	0				
	Transis provident and O	(T) 🔍	Anime .	20	
tere of the Personne	O		These sections		
tria talah kiling	0 0	•	division must		0 0
	0 5				
		- 0			
Sec.					
and the second second	- 0	2.0	The strength		
			Texas I Aging	C man	
				· Factor Search	
				C. man	
and the section					
at stage per stat			and a sector		112
			Parat		
Second antipers	÷.				
	A sensitive	- 0	the searces		(c) 🔍
-		-1.0			
	B Street in the A in D I of all large for some information places		2 B U #		••
	Northe - A - III		10 <u>80</u> 40 a <sup>4</sup>		••
n in <b>a</b> a'	Northe - A - III		28 02		
a a Sera 201 on den	B testine +   A +   B   or of horse for some information plane.				••
8 £	$\label{eq:state} \begin{split} & \left\  \left( \left\  \operatorname{Netron}_{\mathcal{T}} \left[ + \right] \right) \right\ _{\mathcal{T}} = \left\  \left\  \left\  \left\  \left\  \left\  \right\  \right\  \right\ _{\mathcal{T}} \right\  \\ &  of all have, for one otherwise, a descention, a descention of the state of the state$				••
<ul> <li>8 2</li> <li>Seen 2014 on alm</li> <li>Met a</li> <li>Andrea</li> <li>Andrea</li> </ul>	$\label{eq:state} \left\  U_{i}^{-1} \left( \cos t \sin t - \frac{1}{2} \right) \right\ _{1}^{2} \leq \left\  U_{i}^{-1} \left( \cos t \sin t - \frac{1}{2} \cos t \sin t - \frac{1}{2} \sin t \sin $	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
<ul> <li>A</li> <li>See 27% on dee</li> <li>See 37% on dee</li> <li>See 3</li> <li>See 3</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>B. Institute (+) (A = (B)) (</li> <li>a) discussion transition (does not be a set of the set</li></ul>	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			••
<ul> <li>J</li> <li>Stere 20% on dem</li> <li>Mel a</li> <li>Annual Annual Annua</li> </ul>	$\label{eq:constraint} \begin{split} U &= (A + E) \\ & or all heres for two exclusions in the set of the set $	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
<ul> <li>A</li> <li>See 27% on dee</li> <li>See 37% on dee</li> <li>See 3</li> <li>See 3</li> </ul>	$\label{eq:constraint} \begin{split} U &= (A + E) \\ & or all heres for two exclusions in the set of the set $	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
<ul> <li>J</li> <li>Stere 20% on dem</li> <li>Mel a</li> <li>Annual Annual Annua</li> </ul>	$\label{eq:constraint} \begin{split} U &= (A + E) \\ & or all heres for two exclusions in the set of the set $	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
<ul> <li>8 3</li> <li>Sees 20% on all</li> <li>Sees 20% on all</li></ul>	$\label{eq:constraint} \begin{split} U &= (A + E) \\ & or all heres for two exclusions in the set of the set $	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
See 25 on all See 25 on all See 2 See 2 Se 2 See 2 Se 2 See 2 Se 2 S S See 2 S S S S S S S	$\label{eq:constraint} \left\  \begin{array}{c} \left\  {\left\  {{\left\  {{\left\  {{{\left\  {{{\left\  {{{\left  {{{{\left  {{{{\left  {{{{\left  {{{{\left  {{{{\left  {{{{}}}}}}}} \right }}} \right.} \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right }} \\ \end{array} \right.} \\ \end{array} \right.} \\ \left  {{\left  {{\left  {{{\left  {{{}}}}}}} \right.} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right.}} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \right.} \\ \\ \end{array} \right.} \\ \end{array} \right.} \\ \end{array} \right.} \\ \end{array} \right.} } } } } \right }} } } } } } } } } } } \right. } \right.$	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
See 25 on all See 25 on all See 2 See 2 Se 2 See 2 Se 2 See 2 Se 2 S S See 2 S S S S S S S	$\label{eq:constraint} \begin{split} U &= (A + E) \\ & or all heres for two exclusions in the set of the set $	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
See 25 on deal See 25 on deal See 2 Sec 25 on deal Sec 25 on deal	Bit Theorem         A         Bit Theorem           at all how the two ablestication, determined         A         Bit Theorem           bit And the theorem         Bit Theorem         Bit Theorem           Bit Theorem         Bit Theorem         Bit Theorem	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			•
A 2 Sees 2PL on deal	B) The tax is A is a first of a second se	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			
A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	B) The tax is A is a first of a second se	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••			•
Anna Constant Anna Constant An	Bit         Interim (a)         A         N         E           at all how for the set biomedian and set all how for the set biomedian and set all how for the set of th				
Anna 2011 and anna 2011 Anna 2011 and anna 2011 Anna 2011 anna 2011 Anna 201	Norman         A         Norman           State         A         Norman         Norman           State         Norman         Norman         Norman           Norman         Norman         Norman         Norman				]
Anna 2011 and anna 2011 Anna 2011 and anna 2011 Anna 2011 anna 2011 Anna 201					
A a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a	<ul> <li>Marcine in A. S. Elli and Area for two should be determined by the should be should be determined by</li></ul>				]
Anna 2011 and anna 2011 Anna 2011 and anna 2011 Anna 2011 anna 2011 Anna 201	<ul> <li>Marcine in A. S. Elli and Area for two should be determined by the should be should be determined by</li></ul>				]

	section data's 28% campaign					
The sensitive of specify of the following rank and it.	President at					
Notes of the distance of the sector						
Interview         Interview <t< th=""><th>Rad-selector.</th><th>Rue carlipoides</th><th></th></t<>	Rad-selector.	Rue carlipoides				
	Neurola Tours	No rain selected				
The product model discosts, you can partly for which benefits and all the supplies						
Age of a offense on the     Addition of the addition of t	For product related discounds, you can specify for either basiled products the doo Four satisfies					
presticitions		Salezt rule type				
Support cares         (a) [ 4 H () 1 car of         (b) [ Support Plat         (c) 1 careful           B Assistidary         (c) [ Support Plat         (c) 1 careful         (c) 1 careful         (c) 1 careful			0			
Anattion		•				
		Supplier name (* 1. 1997) ons of (* 1. 1997) and (* 1. 1997)	ter:			
	C Autolition					
Attraction and the set of the	🖉 Provation anchailades					
			6			

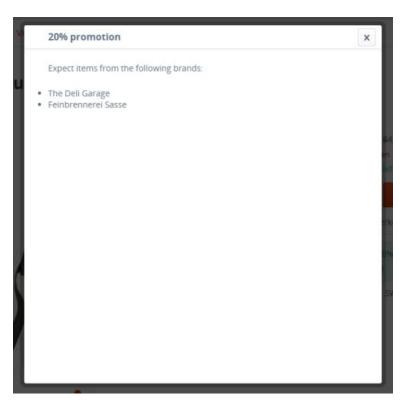
- **1.** First define the type of promotion. In this case, you need a percent discount on a product basis.
- **2.** Enter the name of the promotion. This will be issued in the backend but also appear in the header of the extended description modal box in the frontend.
- **3.** Set the promotion to active
- **4.** Define the order number that appears when an order is placed. Please pay attention to Shopware's order number specifications.

- **5.** If set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion
- 6. Enter the text that should be displayed on the badge. For this example "20% off for nearly all items!".
- 7. Define the value of the promotion. In this case, it is set to 20.
- **8.** Write a brief description, which will be displayed on the product detail page as a small box under the "Add to cart" button.
- **9.** If necessary, write a detailed description. In the frontend, the short description will be clickable should the customer click the short description, the detailed description will appear in a modal box.
- **10.** Set the time limit of the promotion. In this example it is set for 24 hours.
- **11.** Save your promotion.
- **12.** Switch to the "Promotion rules" tab.
- **13.** Define a product rule and switch to the tab "Promotion rules".
- 14. Now define the rule itself. Here it is: Manufacturer is not from the Deli Garage | Feinbrennerei Sasse. You can fill in the individual values themselves (divided by "|" or click on a selection and pick out the desired entry from a list.
- **15.** Finally, you save your promotion. After saving it will appear in the frontend.

The promotion appears in the frontend as follows:



The duration of the promotion will be displayed in a footnote, so that the offer period is clearly evident. When your customer clicks on the promotional box, a modal box will appear with the detailed description:



When the customer completes their purchase, the discounts for the products that aren't from the defined brands will appear as separate items in the shopping cart.

Product		Quantity	Price per unit	Sum	
	Main product Onlier number SW10001 Ready to ship toilay.	3	€448.35*	£448.35*	×
陶	Delvery time appr. 1-3 workitays Main product with reviews Order number 5W10013	4 ×	61.54*	61.34*	,
•	Ready to ship today. Derivery time appr. 1-3 workslays				
Co Erster iter	20% campaign (SW10001)			-089,67*	
		Sum		\$360.62*	
Enter you		Shipping tosts Total amount:		63.90* 6364.52	
Shipping co	iste i	Tatal ansource without VAT. Phys 16 W VAT.		6314.34 650.28	

### "Buy 3 pay 2"

In this example, we will show you how to create a promotion based on the classic formuler "Buy 3 pay 2". The two screenshots below show the settings required to create such a promotion:

	0			
21 Lan				
last settings				
Promotion disclar.	Bu Latir Setur	+ 0 +0+	0 0	•
	helpel 0	G O the setter		
		C Salprint	1 m 1 m 2	
Name (son or basking		0		
calling over larg builtons	The second of O	- 0		
portant.				
at 1 he fine:	0	2 0 bet	0	0.0
		O Charmont dialate	C ment	
			8 Parker land	0
			C mail	
manufact configured	22			
		0. 0 Mileto ma	- D	0
		O Anto a version	10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 1	
		prosectioned		
Shere Recordedary				
0	fortin + A + B			
<b>0</b>	1142 a Japan Sanata		al free descention - all first in the out	
O An a construction constructio	net al l'es fonction, d'accentra come le fair estar estar estar	t - ten Jamme antes - t	al free Jacobie - antij - bat wit	
O An a construction constructio	1142 a Japan Sanata	t - ten Jamme antes - t	al free Jacobie - antij - bat wit	••
Contraction of the second seco	to d'a andre a fin	t in an ann an tai t		
Construction of the second sec	to d'a andre a fin	t in an ann an tai t	al free Jacobie - antij - bat wit	
An a     Mark a	n de la constante	t in an ann an tai t		
	n de la constante	t in an ann an tai t		
Anno 1     Marco 1     Ma		t in an ann an a		•••
Am 1     Am 2     Am 2     Am 3     Am 3     Am 3     Am 4	to the second of the second seco	t in an ann an a		•
Anno 1     Marco 1     Ma	to the second of the second seco	t in an ann an a		•••

ber details (Bey 3, pay 2		
Trends to:		
namelien nale es permiter nel apply, il tra televing rules malete.		
Fall-selecture	Raw configuration	
New rule Tours	No. rate selected	
Age the def Water and New		
Siglife products for discourt or product initial discourts, you can specify to effect basiled products the o for selection New can. Deate	Role configuration	
a contract of these are that	Salect rule type	1.2.5
C prostationpanifate it datati andensative square Service12*	post-Cerprelin (0	
	Dative your rule	
	Odustantas	1 Decemar
Rentifichianc		

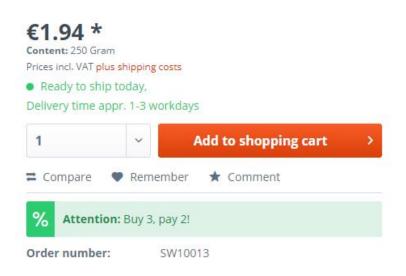
- **1.** First define the type of promotion. For this example you need the mode "Buy X get Y free".
- **2.** Define the name of the promotion. This will appear in the backend as well as in the header of the modal box of the detailed description in the frontend.
- **3.** Set the promotion to active.
- **4.** Define the order number that appears when an order is placed. Please pay attention to Shopware's order number specifications.
- **5.** If set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion

- 6. Enter the text that should be displayed on the badge. For this example "Buy 3, pay only 2".
- 7. Define how many items need to be purchased so that the promotion activated. In this example, we need 3 items to make the promotion valid.
- 8. Define how many items should be counted as free gift. Here one item is free when three are purchased, so one is entered.
- **9.** Write a brief description, which will be displayed on the product detail page as a small box under the "Add to cart" button.
- **10.** Save your promotion.

.

- **11.** Switch to the "Promotion rules" tab.
- **12.** Define a product rule, which appears in the definition mask below.
- **13.** Now define the rule itself. In this example it is: Product name = Putty. You can fill in the individual values themselves (divided by "|" or click on a selection and pick out the desired entry from a list.)
- 14. Finally save your promotion. After saving it will appear in the frontend.

This is how your promotion appears in the frontend:



Once three of the defined items are placed in the basket, the promotion is activated:

Product		Quantity	Price per unit	Sum	
	Main product with reviews Order number SW10013 Ready to step today. Defreey time appr. 5-3 workstays	3 *	61.54*	£5.82*	×
*	Buy 3, pay 2			-€1.94*	
Lister Iter	n number 3				
Enter vou	cher cade	Sum: Shipping costs		63.88* 63.92*	
		Total amount:		\$7.78	
shipping c		Total propulst without VAT.		@0.71	

### "Buy 2 get the 50% off the second item"

In this example we will show you how to create a promotion based on the idea "Buy 2 get 50% off the second item". In the two screenshots below, you can see the various settings required to create such a promotion:

1000	0				
sacistings -	1000 C 1000			113112	
and a series	Profession presentings from and	- 0		0	0
			Ichi sania-	0	
on hange is being			Party Sector	All as for result for	0.0
on succession in succession.	20				
	er besehelten der O	- 0			
and a second					
	- 0	: 0	Ten Internet		0
			International States		
				C Partie saar	
				C and	
residen certifie					
			Non in combat.		•
or the second	= D	•	late president and		
manett destaures	át.				
					: 0
				211 tax	
		1.0			
	• •	0.0			
1018.4					••
Day 2 berns sont ; Mile #	B Terso + A + E plantage at land	E ( B B B ( / /	E	Amora	••
And you have a set of the set of	S (means $x \in A$ ) $(A = B)$ gets diagonal to be $(A = B)$ with the second sec	E ( B B B ( / /	E		
int particular by 2 brins and the second second second sec	<ul> <li>B. Instant (a) (A) (b) (B)</li> <li>paths drager sets build (b)</li> <li>B. The fact (b) (A) (b) (B)</li> <li>B. The fact (b) (A) (b) (B)</li> <li>B. The fact (b) (A) (b) (B)</li> </ul>	E ( B B B ( / /	E		•••
ent puestador		E ( B B B ( / /	E		
An purchase An pu		E ( B B B ( / /	E		•••

tamotion ruhe		
is prevention will apply if the following rules match.		
ut weeks	Rai tartgentes	
See tale	Na rule selected	
ngg of an of these are new.		
lights products for discount, product readed discounts, you can specify to which hashed products the disco- nal venetion.	Rain Landquestras	
New row . Dateda	Select rule type	
Neurope Debos		
Neurope Debos	Product cale	
hannya , Dens Agi farafabasa arina ∴", panan Cympaerdia: f (alogana, hanyalara i 107 tara a' Caldegi angar	Productivite 🔞 👘 🔿	
hannya , Dens Agi farafabasa arina ∴", panan Cympaerdia: f (alogana, hanyalara i 107 tara a' Caldegi angar	e Productión (* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	

• **1.** First define the type of promotion. In this example we need to set the mode to "Products: percentage discount".

- **2.** Define the name of the promotion. This will appear in the backend as well as in the header of the modal box of the detailed description in the frontend.
- **3.** Set the promotion to active.
- **4.** Define the order number that appears when an order is placed. Please pay attention to Shopware's order number specifications.
- **5.** If set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion
- 6. Enter the text that should be displayed on the badge. For this example "Buy 2 items and get the cheapest 50% off!".
- 7. Define the value of the discount on the second product. It's 50% in this example.
- 8. Define how many items need to be purchased so that the promotion activates in the shopping cart, which is 2 in this example.
- 9. This setting means that this promotion can only be used once per shopping cart.
- **10.** Write a brief description, which will be displayed on the product detail page as a small box under the "Add to cart" button.
- **11.** Save your promotion.
- **12.** Switch to the "Promotion rules" tab.
- **13.** Define a product rule, which appears in the definition mask below.
- 14. Now you define the rule itself. In this example it is: Category: Name = Teas and Accessories. You can fill in the individual values themselves (divided by "|" or click on a selection and pick out the desired entry from a list.
- **15.** Finally save your promotion. After saving it will appear in the frontend.

The promotion appears as follows on the detail page:

Product		Quantity	Price per unit	Sum	
80	Shipping free product with highlighting Order number Skr1006 Pree of shipping costs! Bendy to stip today. Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays	1 .	£14.52*	£14,62*	×
Ø	Main product with resources Order number SW10008 Ready to stap today. Defivery time appr. 7-3 workdays	1	65.84*	65.34*	3
8	50% on the second item			-62.92*	
Erter ter	namber >				
Diter would	her code	Sum Shipping costs		€17.54* 40.00*	
Shipping co	sta	Total amount:		C17.54	
		Tetal enourcedthour WT) Pics 16-9 WT)		62.43	

The scaling of the price was registered >1 – for this reason, it is not overwritten because we do not know if the customer wants to buy the second product. However, if the customer does, the promotion will be credited in the shopping cart.

### Promotion with a minimum value in the shopping cart

In this example we will show you how to create a minimum order value promotion (i.e. "Buy for 100 Euro or more and receive a 5% discount off your total order"). The two screenshots below show the settings required to create such a promotion:

Badt tettings.							
	Transfer and percentage document Cal		Chine .	0 9	0		
and of the Provention	To have 100 1 weeks where O						
tere bedge to being				11. bas 201 ante 1000 0			
Torse Control Bandwell							
	The set and a d	. 0					
And the set of the set	and the same of						
Decent							
init to	. 0	0	The strategy		0		
Promotilist configura	dar.						
to onge pir per			New recenter				
tan annage per provi No. anna Trin postoethine							
Decort anipress							
income possible for	al points	- 0					
short description							
	I Folton + A + E E		10 B 10 S				
feit a Landa da d	and the second	(#14) (Barran	- and any - had been	kerne orgo in er			
Cristined descention							
	1 (notice + A + 11 )1.		- 11 m 141 -				
	All horses with the second state						
	ter and the second s	and describe	- and and - see by	Alexandra - Alexandra - Sant Arti,			
siacher					1000		
Nuclear chuis prateitor with oring vacuus:					- 0		
childs president with writing valuables.					• 0		
checks presentes with ending seached	nation activation				•••		
childs president with writing valuables.	nation activation				•]0		
checks presentes with ending seached	nation activation						
checks presentes with ending seached	nation activation						
checks presentes with entire seached	nation activation						
deale provides with writing resulter.	ndan astrofos						
deale provides with writing resulter.	nation activation						
deale provides with writing resulter.	ndin attento 8 nm 190 Codervales						
strate president with Then have a pro- active strate of the veloce strate. 20, 5 10,100	ndin attento 8 nm 190 Codervales						
uber provide state	and be activated an energy of the second sec						
uberg provider with Three based pro- actions assault on the solution assault. SN-15 States Colors rules This providers with a	ndin attento 8 nm 190 Codervales						
<ul> <li>and a second seco</li></ul>	ndar saturian al an 1900 cedar selar (Chenne ca) api, if the following runs with		far urtjed				
checks providers of all services resolutions of These based prov- density of the based prov- density of the based prov- density of the providers of the Provedien rules of the services from the based of the Features of the Provider the based of the Provider of the Provider of the Provider of the Provider of the based of the Provider of the Provider of the Provider of the Provider of the Provider of the Provider of the Provider	ndla zatodia di ne 1920 refer vale Ebenere etc.		National Sector				
checks provides will be in the second secon	ndia zatorian al non 190 Corbo valos (Filimina) espi, il foi foitoren avaita		Seloit				
checks providers of all services resolutions of These based pro- diates and pro- diates and pro- miner details. 20: 0 services details. 20: 0 services resolutions the provider of a Fast service. Ferritain Central	ndia zatorian al non 190 Corbo valos (Filimina) espi, il foi foitoren avaita	cod ter "DOT"	- Select	nite type granticale 🕕			
checks provides will be in the second secon	ndia zatorian al non 190 Corbo valos (Filimina) espi, il foi foitoren avaita	cod is: "00"	- Select of Theorem	nde type g-activate your nate		-	
checks provides will be in the second secon	ndia zatorian al non 190 Corbo valos (Filimina) espi, il foi foitoren avaita		- Select	nde type g-activate your nate			
checks provides will be in the second secon	ndia zatorian al non 190 Corbo valos (Filimina) espi, il foi foitoren avaita	ood is "000"	- Select of Theorem	nde type g-activate your nate		-	
checks provides will be in the second secon	ndia zatorian al non 190 Corbo valos (Filimina) espi, il foi foitoren avaita		- Select of Theorem	nde type g-antoire your nate		-	
deste provider of 11 Constrained provider Automatical and provider and an analysis of the second second second second Proproduce rules Proproduce rule	ndia zatorian al non 190 Corbo valos (Filimina) espi, il foi foitoren avaita	not to "tota"	- Select of Theorem	nde type g-antoire your nate		-	
checks provides will be in the second secon	ndia zatorian al non 190 Corbo valos (Filimina) espi, il foi foitoren avaita	cel to "tot"	- Select of Theorem	nde type g-antoire your nate		-	
deste provider of 11 Constrained provider Automatical and provider and an analysis of the second second second second Proproduce rules Proproduce rule	nd la satudias di mit 1995 ender value (Tender value gels, 17 be following value suich) en mit arminia i l'annet/one i lagar fran i n		- Select of Theorem	nde type g-antoire your nate		-	
deste parados e 41 Construinto e 44 Antesen de adar 2014 Antesen de adar 2014 Proportion Ada Tes parados e 45 Proportion Ada Tes parados e 45 Proportion Ada Tes parados e 45 Proportion Ada Proportion Ada Propor	nd la satudias di mit 1995 ender value (Tender value gels, 17 be following value suich) en mit arminia i l'annestione i lagar fran è n		- Select of Theorem	nde type g-antoire your nate		-	

• **1.** First you need to define the type of promotion. In this case, it needs to be set to "Shopping cart: percentage discount".

BRC

- **2.** Define the name of the promotion. This will appear in the backend as well as in the header of the modal box of the detailed description in the frontend.
- **3.** Set the promotion to active.
- **4.** Define the order number that appears when an order is placed. Please pay attention to Shopware's order number specifications.
- **5.** If set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion
- 6. Enter the text that should be displayed on the badge. For this example "5% discount from 100 Euro".
- 7. Define the value of the discount, which is 5% in this example.
- 8. Write a brief description, which will be displayed on the product detail page as a small box under the "Add to cart" button.
- 9. Save your promotion.
- **10.** Switch to the "Promotion rules" tab.
- **11.** Define a basket rule, which appears in the definition mask below.
- **12.** Now define the rule itself. Here it will be: Total >= 100.
- **13.** Finally save your promotion. After saving it will appear directly in the frontend.

Your promotion appears as follows in the frontend:

Once the minimum shopping cart value of 100 Euro is met or exceeded, the promotion will automatically activate:

### Promotion with a free item

In this example, we will show you how to assign a free item to an order. This is based on the popular sale "Get a free item when 5 or more items are in the shopping cart". The two screenshots below show the settings required to create such a promotion:

al antique antiquestante ( ) antique ( ) a	0		
and the Possible Decision of D	- 0		
ebastimy 🗉 🔕 maran	Par Salaran	60	
en hat ar senset 🕐 🕘 🔮 franc gerachted			
ng na hay below. (The case take any 🔘 🔹			
and the second se			
Same			
State pointed taxes price calculates		0	
and a statute			
A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACTOR O	- 01		
	contro 🖸	•	
and adjust			
anal and the contract of the stage per	***	0.0	
al builde			
* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	e		
Six a hose addition arbait your begr at least 5 terms			
and a state of the second	NAME OF GROOM OF		
entered and age of the sage of the			
	2		
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	* 		
B J. Services and the service of			
end information of the second	Non-santya-sten Select role type		
enter enterente en la principa de la	Nan-iartya-skit		
enter la marca de la marca enter destarte Frenchere enter destarte Frenchere Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero destarte. Faca destarte. Procediero destarte.	New samply also Select table type (The game and new "		
enter la marca de la marca enter destarte Frenchere enter destarte Frenchere Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero destarte. Faca destarte. Procediero destarte.	New satigation Solisit July Jupe (Transmission of the Define your rule		
enter la marca de la marca enter destarte Frenchere enter destarte Frenchere Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero destarte. Faca destarte. Procediero destarte.	New samply also Select table type (The game and new "		
enter la marca de la marca enter destarte Frenchere enter destarte Frenchere Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero destarte. Faca destarte. Procediero destarte.	New satigation Solisit July Jupe (Transmission of the Define your rule		
enter anticipar en la conserva entre como entre como de como una de como entre como de como entre como entre como entre	New satigation Solisit July Jupe (Transmission of the Define your rule		
enter la marca de la marca enter destarte Frenchere enter destarte Frenchere Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero adol Procediero destarte. Faca destarte. Procediero destarte. Procediero adol Procediero destarte. Procediero destarte. Proc	Non-integration Editor table type (Respective your rate (Respective your rate)		
enter enter en la conserva en la con	New configuration Solidari Table Type Definite your table Therms of these acts will be applied		
and intermediate and a plan of the space partice of the space and the s	Non-integration Editor table type (Respective your rate (Respective your rate)		
	New configuration Solidari Table Type Definite your table Therms of these acts will be applied		
https://www.initialized.com/i	New configuration Solidari Table Type Definite your table Therms of these acts will be applied		
and here and an and a first sector and a first sect	New configuration Solidari Table Type Definite your table Therms of these acts will be applied		
Second and the secon	New configuration Solidari Table Type Definite your table Therms of these acts will be applied		

- **1.** First you need to define the type of the promotion. In this case we need to choose "Free items".
- **2.** Define the name of the promotion. This will appear in the backend as well as in the header of the modal box of the detailed description in the frontend.
- **3.** Set the promotion to active.
- **4.** Define the order number that appears when an order is placed. Please pay attention to Shopware's order number specifications.
- **5.** If set, the products in the listing are displayed with a badge, if the products are valid for this promotion

- 7. Here you can search for your free item that will be offered in the frontend. In this example we are choosing Merhzwecknudeln and an oil change.
- 8. Write a brief description, which will be displayed on the product detail page as a small box under the "Add to cart" button.
- 9. Save your promotion.
- 10. Switch to the "Promotion rules" tab.
- **11.** Define a shopping cart rule, which appears in the definition mask below.
- **12.** Define the rule itself. In this example it is: Number of products >= 5.
- **13.** Finally save your promotion. After saving it will appear directly in the frontend.

If your customer meets the number of required items in the shopping cart (which is 5 in this example), the free item will automatically appear as follows:



As an alternative, if there is a selection of free items, the selection can be displayed below in a slider:

Product		Quantity	Price per unit	Sum	
Q	Main product with cross-selling Order number SW10012 Ready to ship today. Delivery time appr. I-3 workdays	5	64.37*	624.35*	×
finter ken	n number 🔰				
Enter vitu Chipping co		Sum: Shipping costs: <b>Total amount:</b> Tatat amount without VAT, Plue 1676 W17		634.95* 6330* 624.25 6340 6340	
elect fre	e product				
	Q				
Mair	nproduct base price calculation Select 3				

The slider uses the same styling as the "Premium items" slider. When "Premium items" is being used, it will affect the free items slider!

### Create a linked promotion

This example is uses the possibility of referring the product and cart rules to create a rule like this: *Buy products from the supplier Feinbrennerei Sasse for at least 50 GBP and get 10% off.* How this works is described in this example:

	0					
Rank Address						
Taxa and a		- 0	Appen	0		
Same of the Description	the second s		Oran market	martification 0		9
Street landge to being	1100		Delge lant	The design from the Degrees Fact O		
Name and in Assessment					- 15	
	the nariale of					
Distant.						
and the	0	0 1	Transition in the local division in the loca			0
			Discont disates)	C must		0
				🗮 Hanna kanal		0
				C mar		0
Permitte configur	#1.0					
Res - 2 mp - 1 mm - 1 mm -		0	After to conclusion.			0
(he said his because	-10		Sylke generation only generative entry.	• 🖉 🔘		0
Olorande parlighting						
	Al grature	- 0	Man young previous		4	0
trene		0 0				
n=14.4	8 Autom A A A B B roby Departs field here for a tear				•	•
rr = 1 <b>a</b> . a Ger 17% of elses	E Anton + A + H				•	0
Ger (Fix of shee) Net: 5 Indian (control)	g Auton + A + E is no by Departs food have be a team of a system of the barries of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of		- 11 <b>a</b>   4 <b>/</b>		•	•
in = 1 <b>a</b> . 2 Ger 10 h of sites	g Auton + A + E is no by Departs food have be a team of a system of the barries of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of		- 11 <b>a</b>   4 <b>/</b>	ann air air air an	•	•
The second secon	g Auton + A + E is no by Departs food have be a team of a system of the barries of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of the system of	•••		9	•	•
The second secon	And Soc.	•••		Sprement with the left	•	
The second secon	And Soc.	•••			•	•
The second secon	And Soc.	•••			•	0
The second secon		•••	0.00		•	•
The second secon		•••	0.00		•	0
The second secon		•••	0.00			0

to promotion will apply. If the following rules malph.		
	Non-independent	
New rule - Delete	Select rule type	
(g) I at others are too (a) hotel organized in Tamaniform in large that is equilibrial.	Disasting call rule 🔘 🔹 🔍	
	Define your tale	
	Tadiyos e a	
	Rain sering also Salari tula luma	
Norrisk Deale	Rain serige-stree Salact role type Prostertyse 🖉 (*)	
Norran. Deele	Salast rule type	
ter verlen Nation Comm gef of these en ter Ω <sup>1</sup> procetty-sportfast. I happen take source "biogenes from"	Estet nie type Promitrike	
New care. Dealler • 🔐 If all of these are lost	Eelect rule type (Penetrole @	
Norran. Deele	Eelect rule type (Penetrole @	

- 1: Choose the promotion mode, in this example use "Products: percentage discount".
- 2: Choose a name for your promotion, this name will also be used in the cart.
- **3:** Activate this checkbox, when you want to tease this promotion in the listing using a badge.
- **4:** Activate the promotion.
- **5:** Choose a order number for your promotion.
- 6: Write a text for your teasing badge.
- 7: Set the value of the promotion, for this example we use 10.
- 8: Activate the option "Refer promotion rules to product rules".
- 9: Write a description for your promotion, this will be displayed at the items detail page.
- **10:** Save your promotion.
- **11:** Switch to the tab "Promotion rule".
- 12: Create a shopping cart rule.
- 13: Configure your shopping cart rule, for the example we use *Total price* >= 50.
- 14: Now create the product rule.
- **15:** Configure your product rule, for the example we use *Supplier name = Feinbrennerei Sasse*.
- 16: Save your promotion.

At the detail page the promotion gets displayed like this:

In the shopping cart you can see, that if you're under 50 GBP, the promotion will not activate, but over 50 GBP:

Product	Quantity	Price per unit	Sum	
Main product base price calculation Crider manber Skrinoto Ready to site today: Definery time appr. 5-3 workstays	6 *	64.87*	629.22*	2
Enter item number				
Differ Watcher code	Sumi Shipping costs: Total amount:		629.22* 63.90* <b>63.12</b>	
and here a	Total amount without VAT. Phys. 16 W VAT.		621.55 64.57	
Product	Quantity	Price per unit	Sum	
Main product base price calculation Order number \$X1000 Ready to sitsp totalsy Derivery three appr. 5-3 workstays	12 ~	\$4.87*	£58.44*	2
10% discount from 50€ Shopware Food (SW10010)			-65.84*	
Enter item number				
triter wucher code	Sum: Shipping costs		632.60* 63.90*	
Shipping costs :	Total amount: Total amount without VAT.		454.50 642.70 67.81	

## Tips & tricks

### Formatting using Smarty variables

Here you can find some examples how you can affect using smarty commands the output in the summary and the detailed description.

- {\$promotion->validTo} -> Date and time in english format
- {\$promotion->validTo|date:dates} -> Formatting of the year according to localization
- {promotion->validTo|date:times} -> Formatting of the year according to localization
- {\$promotion->validTo|date:"dd.MM.yy"} -> Fix format: Day, Month, Year
- {\$promotion->validTo|date:"HH:mm"} Uhr -> Fix format: 12 hours format
- {promotion->validTo|date:"hh:mm"} Uhr -> Fix format: 24 hours format

### Inheritance of the badge text

If you leave the "Badge text" empty, Shopware will fallback to "Campaign" for english and "Aktion" for german.

The language variants will only fallback to their own snippet, so english will only fallback to "Campaign" and german will always fallback to "Aktion"!

# **Plugin: backend orders**

The backend orders plugin is ideal for creating orders from the backend. In case of your customers call, fax or email you and want to buy something, you can easily place the order via backend. The module is also able to classify the incoming orders by type in the anlysis module.

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

## **Plugin settings**

After installing the plugin you can setup it directly in the plugin page or via **Configuration > Basic** settings > Additional settings > Backend orders:

Basic settings - Backend on	liers			8	
Basic settings - Backend orr Q Search S Step settings S Step settings S Step settings S Step settings S Additional settings Additional settings Additional settings Logacy options S full dot	Description You want to quickly create several window in the backend allows you useful when receiving outers por te on the language available in the sit Guest account 4-mail: Desktop types:	lephone, re	to contrast bahinds-the-scenes, with just email or fax. It is also possible to bas Backmet	you've found the right plugin. A simple a line mouse clicks. This is especially the language of the order continuation	00
Shopware Koense     Privacy     Liveshopping     Benkend onders	Send confirmation mail as default	0	Yes		0

**Guest account e-mail (1)**: This email is used for guest accounts, which are created when your customers don't have an account in your shop and want to order by phone for example.

**Desktop types (2)**: With the desktop types you can set the channels on which the orders come in, for example, phone, fax or email. Different entries have to be separated by a comma (,).

**Send confirmation mail as default (3)**: If enabled the system sends a automatic order confirmation upon creating an order in the backend.

## Create an order

Onderts.			890
the second		State and an and a state of the	( Q :====
Franci	( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( )	Control And Article Tomard System Disper Stop California	Like Constructed data Constructions percentagenes. Open Open 2000 💆 🖉 🖌
78			
Order abdus:			
Paymonti statua.			
Paynett method:	1000 L		
Printing type	liner		
Casterber group	-		
lars.			
West.	Sand .		
Petrer	1001 ·		
Dripping marky.			
Billing country			
Bugplet:			
Photos			
Decoments			
(100s	- Ramo		
		(8 9 Page 1 271 9 2) 🕹	Anatopog 1-5071 Mandar al anders 20 •
		Onterprotow	8

After installing the plugin you get the additional button **create order (1)** in the order overview to place orders in the backend.

#### Create a new order

Circulo order			864
Choose Cameroy (1101 + Longauge:	+ likep: We contained	antantani. Or	and the same the second s
aine g adminis	imparg address		Payment
		Use failing actions	
Wagong com		Additional tyles and pr	
Réputer anti-	Strapping soots	Alamada 1 Alamada 2 Alamada 2	Donie Spar
Penderm			
O AM O Instanti di universi ili Anti amatati			
C Anthrenia	Aares	Garris	Direct Tated Tax in the Instance
Theyspay red process Tak time			Sart 3.00 Signary code: 5.00 F Teat 8.00 F Total 8.00 F
Sand real contreplice			Taxion 600 C
			Canal Communities Dealer

User account (1): Create a new user account. guest account (2): Create a quest account. existing customer (3): Search for an existing customer.

#### **Customer details**

County under for Julies Date - 20003				88
Doose Carrency ( 118	· Shoe downling alo		Deale Distance Oracle Galet	Open Continent (Q. Anter Den
Niley police	Wagong pilots		Paret	
are dan Terranar t 📼 🔕	0	- 🕢 Use titing address	Propagation.	- 0
Mis. Jane Doe Teol street 1 Pichel XIXX Genat tawa			No payment data tound.	
States and		And the of the second		
	testing contes	Altribute 1 Altribute 2 Altribute 3		rene Tree
Parina				
O Abs O Share of periods . 354 Add decreet				
C Anto some No		Gantity	Pas Sai	Tara Arka
Distance on process				Sum 0.00 6 Shipping cests 0.00 6 Tatal: 0.00 6
Tarber				Total without tain 0.00 4 Tain earry 0.00 4
			Later	Constanting Const

**Billing address (1)**: Use the drop down menu to select an existing billing address for this order. **Shipping address (2)**: If the shipping address is the same as the billing address, press the checkbox. If not, you can choose an existing shipping address from the drop down menu. **Payment method (3)**: Select an existing payment method from the drop down menu here.

#### **Order information**

Dreate onthe for Julia Dox - 20083				8
Note Cornery 108 - Langeage Dight	ill a block Something ease	() <b>Cro</b>	In Cartonine - Calente Coard - Coard	a Classes Q. Jater Dea
Charge with west	Stearn address		Peret .	
Inter Dec Test Intern 1   Mit Jane Dec  Mit Jane Dec  Mit Jane Dec  Mit Jane Dec  Mit Jane Jeen		Use talling address	Transveril a	
heary cats		Address Internation		
Brigging method:	Shipping costs: 11 20 Shipping costs: 31 0	Attribute 1:  Attribute 1:  Attribute 1:  Attribute 1:  Attribute 1:  Attribute 1:	Device 1	Spec 🛛 💌 😡
And Constant and Add Street.				
Addentisetter	Jame .	Ganity	Peas Xiel Tar	aris. saint
Desity of sizes				Sum 0.00 Brigging costs: 3.80 Tetal: 3.84 Total vitina tas: 3.84 Tas sum 0.00
Press and management				

#### **Shipping costs**

Choose the **shipping method (1)** you want to ship with, the shipping costs will be entered automatically. If you want to override the default shipping costs, you can do this in **shipping costs (2)** and **shipping costs net (3)**.

#### **Additional information**

In the **free text fields (4)** you can set the free text fields if you work with them. Additionally you can set the **device type (5)**, this is the channel, over which the order has been placed (phone, fax, etc.).

#### Positions

Sheate order for John Dile - 20803								:8
turne Carriero (118 +) Largeoge: (119	• Day basebige	60)	13	nam tokonner	Case Card	Carlo Carlos	Q.101	lifer .
ming watering .	Stand oppos			Farm	ei.			
Line (he had had )		Cher billing a	Officia		erger erst øyrnærd data Kourst	1		
lage g colt.		Addressed before the						
Rostra ration (Statut Many )	Negating contex 1 = Negating contex 120 ref	Antinan 1 Antinan 2	760-1 787-2		D	levice Type:	S 3	- 0
		Abtinate 2						
Maria Contraction of United States	term 🜑	Abroub 2	Daming O		tor O	The st feed		00
And Charles of selected and Addressed	ter O Anno bit de anoste A					19	e ( i	0 0 6 2 7 10.00

Add (1): Lets you add positions to your order.

Add discount (2): Lets you add an individual discount to this order. You can only add one discount per order.

**Article number (3)**: Search by order number or name, click to add the article to the order. The article details will be filled in automatically.

Name (4): Search by name or order number, click to add the article to the order.

**Quantity (5)**: Enter& the desired article quantity that you want to add.

Price (6): Is automatically filled, but can be changed by clicking the field.

**Total (7)**: Shows the sum of this position.

**Tax in % (8)**: Shows the tax rate which is used for this item. This can be changed by clicking in the field. **Instock (9)**: Shows the amount of items in stock.

**Delete position (10)**: Lets you delete the entry, a pop-up will ask for confirmation.

**Open position (11)**: Opens the article.

Cart value (12): Shows the amount of your order live. After any action, it will recalculates itself.

#### Add discount

D	Type:	Percentage	-
2	Tax:	19%	-
3	Value:		A 7
4	Name:	Optional name	

The discount is using four settings:

- Type (1): Choice between an absolut and procentual discount
- Tax (2): Which tax is used on the discount
- Value (3): The value of the discount
- **Name (4)**: The name of the discount, which will be displayed in the order confirmation or the order documents.

Dreate order for John Doe - 20003								83
hons Group (100 + ) Legacar (Dated	· Boy Service of	÷);	-	er Tartiner	Down Gard	Clien Call	Q.amite	
Ding altern	Stoong address			Payton	a)			
Anna Cron Taul 10 per 1		- R Unititity a	Schutte .	Pag	section .			
Mit Jane Doe Test steel 1 PO40 XXX Geaat town				Nia pagement data foural.				
May gauge states		Additional tribulant						
Brook advect	11	Abruar 1	48.1			Device Type:		0
	thipping solats 3721	Altothule 2	AB.3					
		Adminute 3						
Protection								
Q Add Q Dates of potential 200 Add document								
	earer tais product with properties		Guardia .	P138	Post of A	546-01 Pa	*:0	1010
a Inscretz 0 'n	ter proport with properties			* -0.00 hs	1.004	1.	1	000
Dopy espon							Burn Shipping costs Total Total Without tas:	94.954 3.93 € 98.85 € 83.07 €
The second secon					_	_	The sure:	15.70.4
					2.17	And Designed	EARLINE CONTRACTOR	Create

The **discount (1)** is displayed like an article, but can not be altered afterwards. To change aspects of a discount you have to delete the old one and create a new one right away.

#### Create (and new)



In the lower right corner you'll find three buttons to cancel or create the order:

**Create and new (1):** issues the order and directly opens the backend order window again. This is most sensible if you plan on making up several orders in a row.

**Create (2):** issues the order, closes the current window and opens the order's details page.

## Analysis

Our comfortable analysis gives you a nice overview of the amount of orders which have been places by the different devices.

The analysis can be opened using **Marketing > Analysis > Analysis > Turnover by device type** 

Statistica .										860
and the second se	H see			The second	- 0	0/				C inches of land
In the constant of the co	O Pose		o	•	0	•				•
	Device type									Contraction of the local data
	Contra	4								
			1.4	4	÷.	Turnover	*	140	4	tag.

**Shop (1)**: Choose the shop for your analysis.

Filter (2 & 3): You can set a date range to filter the result.

**Update (4)**: Updates the results based on the filter.

**Export (5)**: Use this to export your filtered results as a CSV file.

Display as table/chart (6): This button lets you toggle between a chart and table view.

# **Plugin: Bonus System**

### Introduction

The bonus system of Shopware offers you the possibility to credit bonus points to customers as an incentive to revisit to your shop.

Bonus points are calculated by the shopping cart value using an adjustable factor which can be defined in the backend. The customer can then redeem these bonus points for defined items in your shop. Additionally, the customer has the option of allocating points in a voucher. The conversion factor for this can also be defined in the backend.

The bonus system is also capable of supporting subshops. You can define different bonus items and conversion factors for each language- and subshop. You can also decide whether each shop have the bonus system active or not.

The bonus system is only usable for customers with an account in your shop. Quick orders without creating an account cannot receive bonus points. As shop operator, you should deactivate the option for quick orders or hint at this.

### Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

## **Email templates**

If you want to show the bonus points in the order confirmation email, you have to customize the sORDER email template. Just go to **Configuration -> Email templates** and edit the **sORDER** template. In "Plaintext" you can find the following lines:

{\$details.price|padding:8} EUR
{\$details.amount|padding:8} EUR

Replace those lines with the following code:

```
{if $details.isBonusArticle}
   {$details.points_per_unit|padding:8} points
   {$details.required_points|padding:8} points
   {elseif $details.isBonusVoucher}
   {$details.required_points|padding:8} points
   $details.price|padding:8} EUR
   {else}
   {$details.price|padding:8} EUR
   {$details.amount|padding:8} EUR
```

 $\{/\texttt{if}\}$ 

In the *HTML text* field you can find the following lines:

{\$details.price|padding:8}{\$sCurrency} {\$details.amount|padding:8} {\$sCurrency}

Replace those lines with the following code:

### Additional variables

- {\$additional.sBonusPoints.spending} -> spent points
- {\$additional.sBonusPoints.remaining} -> leftover points
- {\$additional.sBonusPoints.earning} -> Amount of points get for the order
- {\$additional.sBonusPoints.user} -> Amount of point before the order

## Functions of the plugin

In this section we'll explain the backend module of the Bonus System Premium Plugin.

At opening the module, the home page of the bonus system will be shown which lists all the functions of the plugin. With these four areas, the functions of the bonus systems are fully covered for the respective shop. Consider, that these are valid only for the selected shop!

On the left side there is a list of available functions:

- Settings (1)
- Users (2)
- Bonus Articles (3)
- Articles (4)
- Categories (5)
- Special offers (6)

Orders	(7)
--------	-----

		Select shop:	Demoshop	
0 0 0	8 8 6 0	Contract arrays		
Settings These Tonus potistic	Protects Coleganos Special affirs Contest			_
meral				
ctivals service mode:				0
clivate bonus producte:	V			0
priversion factor bones points:	1		3	: 0
	Vition for a bonus point in Euro			
tivation of bonus points:	If under is "paid"			. 0
sunding bonus points:	Round down			• •
aya until activation:	14		Н	: 0
	Wirest days			
neash point on checkout confirm page:				0
onsider voucher bonus points:	<b>v</b>			0
onus points calculation mode:	Do not consider discounts			• 0
sclude customer groups:	1			
				_

Before you set any options, please **select your shop (1)** first.

Bonus system			800
	Select whop:	Demoshop	-
		Demostrop	
Selleg: Uses Down products Products Edegrates Special afters Orders		EN-Shop	

## Settings

In this area you can find the various bonus system settings, which are divided into three areas:

		Select shop:	Demoshop		
-thogs liters from protect	Products Calegoree Special office Orders				
neral					
tivale service mode:					0
tivate bonus products:	V				0
inversion factor bonus points:	t			-	0
	View for a bonus point in Euro			-	
tivation of bonus points:	If under in "point"			-	0
ounding bonus points:	Round down				0
iye until activation:	14			-	0
cash point on checkout confirm pap	Want days				
icash point on checkout continu pap					
mus points calculation mode:	De not consider discourds				
	- Do not entrance carconets			-	-
clude customer proups:					•

### General

In the **General** area the following options are available:

#### Activate service mode (1)

When the service mode is enabled, the whole frontend functions of the module will be disabled and hidden. The shop itself is still accessible.

#### • Activate bonus products (2):

If this is active, bonus articles will be displayed in the frontend.

#### • Conversion factor bonus points (3):

This is the conversion factor at which the customer receives a bonus point. Bonus points do not include shipping costs, but cart surcharges.

#### • Activation of bonus points (4):

Here can be defined, when the bonus points will be unlocked. When you're using "If order is paid", the points were directly activated when you set the payment state "Komplet bezahlt" / "completely paid", but at least at the cronjob run. See the help text in the elements for additional information.

#### "When order is payed" refers to the payment state "komplett bezahlt" of the respective order!

#### • Rounding bonus points (5):

Here you can define how bonus points are rounded.

#### • Days until activation (6):

Here you can set the delay for credit the bonus points. The activation is performed via cronjob and only, if you have the activation method *After x days of the order*. This function requires the plugin **Cron** to be installed and active. Then the cronjob **SwagBonusSystemCron** can be executed as often you want.

#### • Encash point on checkout confirm page (7):

If you activate this function, your customers can redeem bonus points in the checkout too.

#### • Consider voucher bonus points (8):

Vouchers can be affect the counting of the bonus-points if this setting is enabled.

### • Bonus points calculation mode (9):

Here you can define, whether you want discounts and surcharges to be considered at the calculation of th ebonus points or not.

#### • Exclude customer groups (10):

Here you can exclude customer groups from the bonus program.

#### • Automatic bonus points deduction for cancelled orders (11):

This checkbox allows you to specify whether bonus points should be posted back to the customer's account when an order is cancelled.

#### • Applied to status (12):

With this option you can determine which status the order must reach in order for the bonus points to be posted back to the customer's account.

#### • Consideration time (Cronjob) (13):

Orders placed after this time will be included in the points cancellation process.

onus system			8
	Select shop	sw5718	
iettogs Users Users Users protoch	Posturio Calegories Special allers Calegories		
neal -			
tivale service mode:			
tivate bonus products:	2		
orversion factor bonus points:	10		8 : 0
	Value for a bonus paint or funn		
struction of bonus points:	If order is "paid"		4 - 6
sunding bonus points:	Round down		6 - 0
rys until activation:	14		6 : (
	Week days		
cash point on checkout confirm page			•
onsider voucher bonus points:	<b>8</b>		
onus points calculation mode:	Do not consider discourts		9 - 0
clude customer groups:	1		10 -
viornatic bonus points deduction for incelled onters:	0		
ill be applied to status:	Catcolledirejected		12 -
me of application (Cronjob):			
	Orders places since this firm will be included in the bonus point savorefation process.		
aling bonus points			

The cronjob feature allows an automatic processing of various functions. At the installation the new cronjob was added to the default cronjob list of Shopware. If you are already using cronjobs, no further adjustments are required.

### **Debiting bonus points**

In this area the following options are available:

#### • Activate debiting (1):

Is this item is enabled, the customer can exchange the bonus points in their shopping cart for euros. Shopware automatically generates a voucher and adds it to the shopping cart.

#### • Conversion factor (2):

The factor for the conversion of bonus points is defined here (like in General). Unlike the General area, you can define here how many points are equal to one euro. Note that the minimum value for redeeming bonus points must be at least 1 euro. Only from this amount the counter appears in the frontend (shopping cart).

#### • Type of debiting limitation (3):

The conversion of bonus points in euro can be restricted here. You can enter a fixed euro amount or determine the restrictions relative to the order value.

#### • Value of limitation (4):

Here the euro amount for the restriction is entered.

Bonus system				8	90	1
		Select shop:	Demoshop			+
Settop Units Dominated	uds Products Collegues Special afters Outlets					
Wolfeng brinne polete						ľ
Activate debiting:					0	
Conversion factor:	2 109			0	0	
	Number of bonus points for a Earts					
Type of debiting limitation:	3 Maximum X EUR				•	
Value of limitation:	100			-	0	
	Maximum vocentri calar in Euro					

#### Template

In the template area the following options are available:

#### • Text for bonus product listing (1):

This text will be displayed in the listing of the bonus items in the frontend.

#### • Show banner (2):

Since the upload field don't support the display of existing data and/or images, the banner can be deactivated here. When uploading a graphic file, it will be transferred to the server in the background.

#### Display accordion (3):

If this point is enabled, the bonus article accordion appears on the home page and the category listing. Visually, this corresponds to the manufacturer accordion on the right side of the home page of your shop. This function is shopping world compatible.

#### • Display bonus product slider (4):

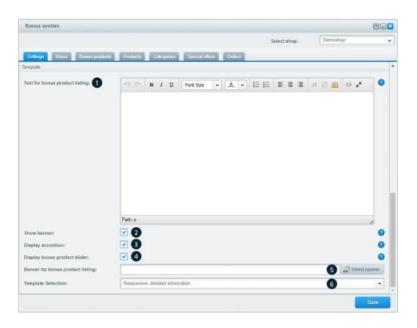
If this item is enabled, the bonus article slider will be shown in the shopping cart and on the home page (also in combination with shopping worlds).

#### • Banner for bonus product listing (5):

The upload field does not support any existing graphics. So you can only upload graphics initially, or overwrite existing graphics later.

#### • Template-Selection (6)

This setting defiens which listing appears in the frontend when opening http://mydmain.com/BonusSystem.



## Users

In this tab, you can see all the bonus points of your customers and manually **edit them by doubleclicking (1)**. As soon as the adjustment of points is completed, the changes can be updated by clicking the **Update button (2)**.

Bonus system					882
			Select shop	c Demostrap	-
Settings Users	Berus products Produc	11 Galegoven Special offen 0	in .		
Castomer number	Name	Erral	Addwas	Ports	sanh)
20005		Child obvious com		0	2
		@shapware.com			

## **Bonus Articles**

In this tab you can add al the items you want to sell for bonus points. ust go to the **search field (1)** and add the item. After adding the item you can set the **number of bonus points (2)**, which are required to buy the item for bonus points.

C	Delete selected products	Add borws product:	Product 1 er ma	ne		Q rearth
	Order number	Product		Required points	Position	
1	SW10012	Main produc	t with cross-seiling	30 2	0	

Now the customer can buy these items for bonus points (1).



## Articles

Here you can exclude items from bonus points. If the customer buys this item, he won't get bonus points for it. Over the **search interface (1)** you can search items by name and ordernumber. (You always define base items. If your item uses variants, each variant is available for your defined bonus points.)

Bonus system					5	382
				Select shop:	Demoshop	
provides provide proce	Internet and Internet	designation designation	and a second			
Settings - Uters - 11m	is products Peadacts	Californies Special I	ters Owen			
Constantial Detected products	Exclude product:	Ended numbers	0		(Q. sent.	- >
And the second second second second	Conceptuation of the Property line of the	- Andrew Contraction of the second second			(Q. search	2

## Categories

Here you can set categories, which were excluded from bonus points. Just search for the category name in the **search interface (1)** and add it. Your customers won't get bonus points for buying items from this categories. The items in the category can also no longer be defined as bonus items.

Bonus system						00
				Select shop:	Demoshop	
Sellings Users Renat	products Products	Categories Special after	Dimes			
Schort) (Unre) (Unre)	Exclude category:	Categories Street Inte	t Dian		(Q. sou	τħ.

## **Special offers**

This option offers you the possibility to set deviant bonus points. Just **search (1)** for the item you want and add it, then choose the **offer type (2)**:

- Fix Here the item will be set to a fixed value (3) of bonus points the customer can gather for this item
- **Multiply with** At this offer type the default bonus points will multiplied with the **offer value (3)**.

Moreover you can set offers for a limited time (4)

							Select sh	and a	Dance	tes		
Settings Oams	Benus products	Protects	1990	west Special	of the s	Otten						
O Delete Add pr	internet Thereit	at sumber marries	6			filter: Sho	 	1.11		10	a marsh.	
Conces North	ounce [					Filters Store						
	Product same	Offer type		Offer value		Foors date	From hour	0	To date		To hour	
								4	To date 2018-12-07			

## Orders

This tab lists all existing orders since the activation of the bonus system. This applies also to the **Number** of bonus points (1) that the customer receives for his order. Using the **Search (2)** in the toolbar, specific orders can be found quickly and easily. Via the icons **Open customer & order(3)** you can jump directly to the appropriate interface.

### Activate bonus points manually

Select (4) the desired orders and click the button Approve selected (5).

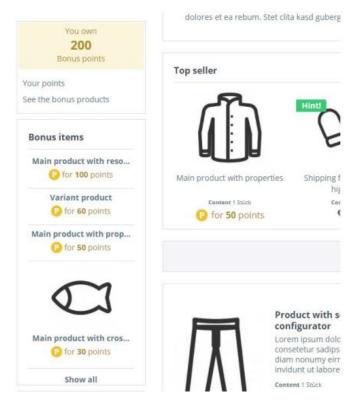
Bones system								800	
					Select shop	e Dèn	oshop		
Sellings Dire	n flatas products Produc	te Cabigaren	Special aftern	Onless					
Approve select	e (5)					(	2 9		
Order number	Customer numbel Customer	Email	Address	Amount	Order time	Approval	Points	3	
20004	20004			393.99 EUR	2018-12-06 0	Walling for ap	390	2 1	

## Elements in the front and backend

Once the bonus system of Shopware is enabled, new items can be found in the frontend.

### Accordion

If you have defined and activated bonus articles, an accordion with the first five articles will now appear on your home page. These are sorted on the field 'Position'. At the end of the accordion is a link "Show all" which guides the user to the listing of the bonus articles.



### Article slider

In addition to the accordion an article slider with all bonus items will be shown in the shopping cart and on the home page. This can be disabled is the backend.



### **My Account**

Once the user is logged, the User bonus points (1) is displayed next to My Account.

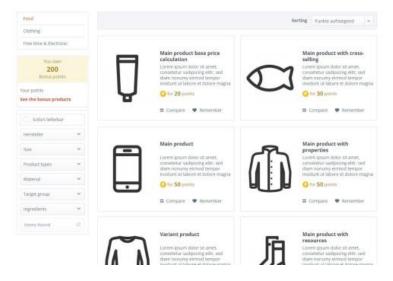
Clicking on You have X bonus points causes two links to appear, Bonus articles and User bonus point account (2).

If the user has put an article in the shopping cart, **Bonus points for the current shopping cart (3)** is displayed in the header section of the page.



### Listing all bonus articles

A new listing for bonus articles was added (**www.yourshop.com/BonusSystem**), which displays all bonus articles defined in the backend. If the user is logged in, the points for the article appears green if he had already collect enough points. Should the user have not enough points for the article, the remaining points are displayed in red in the row beneath.



### **Detail page**

In order for the user to see how many points an article is worth, a new element (1) has been added below the "Buy" button.



To distinguish whether the article will be bought for money or bonus points, two radio buttons have been added over the "Buy" button. The shown points represents the equal price per unit.

### Shopping cart

- As in the header, the bonus points are also displayed in the shopping cart over the order positions table.
- Articles which were purchased for bonus points, are displayed here with a special mark (2).
- For converting bonus points into money, a jQuery has been implemented into the UI. The user can easily determine the value by adjusting the **slider control (3)**.
- Keep in mind that the **Slider (3)** will only be displayed, when the equal points reach at least 1 Euro.
- Below the shopping cart sum, a new element has been added which is responsible for displaying the issued points (4).

Product	Quantity	Price per unit	Sum
Main product Criter number SW10001 Ready to ship today; Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays	3	6395.514	G86514 3
Enter Aem number			
harge your bonus points as voucher (EUR) now:	D		
200			
P Visu own 200 Bonut prints		10 tonus points + €1.00 (	musimum (1.00 possible
Veccram: 200 Borea pores		18 bonus pones + £1,00 (	maximum (1.00 possible
1.00 # / 00.10		10 tonus points + €1.00 (	maximum († 10 possible
1.00 F / C0.10 Referen points	sume	10 bonus potes + 61.00	maximum 45.00 possible 6006-511
1.00 F / c0.10 Redeem points	Mispiping xouts:	16 bonus points + 61.00	0851, 0821,
1.00 P / 60.10 Redeem points	thisping costs: Total amount:	16 bonus politis + 61.00 (	6385314 63237 646385
1.00 P / 60.10	Shippping county Total amount: Total amount:	10 bonus points + €1.00	638(-514 63.28* 6463.85 635-33
1.00 P / 60.10 Rudeen pdints	thisping costs: Total amount:	10 Domis points + €1.00	6385.514 63.24* 6463.85

As the bonus articles the accounted bonus points will displayed in the item list with a special mark(1) is displayed in a separate listing with a special symbol.

Product		Quantity	Price per unit	Sum	
	Main product Oxder number (swintco) Insaty to chips today. Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays	1. v	6386,51*	€386.51*	х
0	Voucher for 10 points  Order number GUT-BONUSD			-61.00*	Ű.

 Additionally, another bonus article slider is located below the "Proceed to checkout" button, as it is displayed on the home page. Here the customer can see again what they are able to buy for their bonus points. This slider can be hidden in the backend module.

#### Email

If you have configured your email template as described in the plugin installation, the bonus point sum is also displayed there.

#### Account

Another point has been added to the **My Account** section called **My Point Account**. All orders from which points were collected are displayed here. The points for the with points redeemed positions are also shown in the grid "My orders". Here the customer can see **status of activation of bonus points (2)**.

tomer a		

168 Banus potritis	My point	s account						
Your points	Orders							
See the bonus products	Date	Order number	Status 🗿	Amount	spent	Sarne		
Hi, Netto	20 Nov 2018	20036	Waiting for approval	368,79	1.14	+3		
Dyahrimay	20 Nov 2018	20004	Approved	168,79	- 95	+3		
Profile Addresses	Bookings							
Fayment methods	Date	Time	Туре	Reason		Amour		
Orders	2074ov 2018	1464B	Earning	Order #20004		+3		
Support Administration	20 Nov 2018	1464B	Spending	Order #20006		54		
Request Support Instant downloads	20 Nov 2018	14:47	Spending	Order #20025		-6		
WHIP HIT	20 Nov 2018	14.47	Spending -	Otder #20004				

### Integration of the bonus system components

Before the components are individually linked into the template, a test is recommended, whether the bonus system and the bonus articles are activated:

#### Accordion:

{include file='frontend/plugins/swag\_bonus\_system/accordion/accordion.tpl'}

#### Article slider with bonus articles:

{include file="frontend/plugins/swag\_bonus\_system/recommendation/slider.tpl"}

These examples are only possible extensions, it's not necessary to implement this after a default installation.

# **Plugin: Bundle**

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

## **Plugin settings**

xclude bundles from percental vouchers:	Ves	
ake bundle discount into account when alculating voucher:	Ves	•
how bundle below product description:	No	

- **Exclude percental vouchers for bundle:** If active, the customer can't add percental vouchers to the cart, when he has a bundle in his cart. Here the customer has to use general vouchers or delete the bundle.
- Take bundle discount into account whe calculating voucher: By default, percental vouchers
  are calculated using the item value. Surcharges and discounts are normally excluded. When you
  activate this option, the bundle discount will be included to the discount calculation to prevent
  duplicate discounts.
- **Show bundle below product description:** If you activate this option, the bundle is displayed below the item description.
- Mark bundle products in the listing page: Activating this option, bundle items are displayed with a little badge in the frontend.

## **Creating a bundle**

Open the item, which you want to sell in a bundle. In the item detail window, open the tab "Bundle", here you will find all settings to create a bundle.

Apre Desta di constan		Configuration	100							
Tankin ( )	0		O 1			District or second submitted		1 ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) (		
		Not beauty spect	0			And all only line in the local division.				12
		Rends Spec-	0			Loose	0			
		Damediger	O President State	ei .		180.8	0			4
		w(free)	00			Value Income	0			-
		Buildly stills melded	G							
						Valid to:				1
		Avenue Received and and a	0		:					
		Avenue Received and and a	0		\$					
		Austra	0		‡ Internet			Magayada Jone Jin Prosession M	S.S. classic sets plan all spectrum at	
		Avenue Avenue Alt protect Protect series			¢ Johann part					
		Avenue Avenue Alt protect Protect series			t Internation		•	ADD INCOMESSION IN	AND PARTONNESS OF	
		Avenue Avenue Alt protect Protect series			teres age		•	ADD INCOMESSION IN	AND PARTONNESS OF	
		Avenue Avenue Alt protect Protect series			¢ Internet		•	ADD INCOMESSION IN	AND PARTONNESS OF	
		Avenue Avenue Alt protect Protect series			4 Internation			ADD INCOMESSION IN	AND PARTONNESS OF	
		Avenue Avenue Alt protect Protect series			4 Internation			ADD INCOMESSION IN	AND PARTONNESS OF	

- Add bundle (1): With this button you can add a new bundle.
- Delete all selected (2): Delete the selected bundles using this button.
- Bundle list (3): Here all bundles are shown, which are created from this item.
- **Bundle name (4):** Give your bundle a name here. This name is shown in the bundle list after saving.
- **Show bundle name (5):** When you want the bundle name to be shown in the frontend, activate this option.

- **Bundle type (6):** Chosse between "Normal bundle" and "Selectable bundle".
  - With a normal bundle the customer can only buy the whole preassembled bundle.
  - With a selectable bundle the customer can decide, which articles of the bundle he wants to buy.
- **Discount type (7):** Choose between "Percentage discount" and "Absolute discount"
  - The percentage discount will subtract a percentage value from the price, e.g. 15%.
  - The absolute discount deducts an absolute discount from the total price of the bundle, e.g. GBP 15,-.
- Active (8): Set this checkbox to activate the bundle.
- **Bundle order number (9):** The bundle order number must be assigned manually, this is the order number of the bundle discount, which will be cleared in the cart.
- **Position (10):** This defines the order of the bundles. if you have multiple bundles for one item, this will set the position in the display order.
- **Display products globally (11):** Here you can set, wheather or not the bundle should be shown just on the item you are creating the bundle for or at all involved item detail pages.
- Show delivery time in the bundle (12): Here you can set, which delivery time should be shown at the bundle.
  - Individually for each product: This will display the delivery time for each prodict seperately.
  - **Only the longest:** This displays only the longest delivery time for all products.
  - **Only the longest and individually for each product:** This displays the longest and each individual delivery time the same time.
  - No displaying: No delivery time will be shown.

When a product has no delivery time set, the default snippet "DetailDataNotAvailable" from frontend/plugins/index/delivery\_informations is shown. This value will also used for the longest delivery time, no matter if other products have a longer delivery time.

- Limited (13): If this option is activated, the bundle is only displayed in the frontend, when It is in stock.
- **Stock (14):** Here you can set an individual bundle stock. If your item has a stock of 50 and you want to sell the bundle only 20 times, just enter 20 here. After selling the 20th bundle, it will disable automatically.
- Valid from / to (15): Here you can enter the time frame the bundle should be active in.

### Products



- Add product (1): Using the search you can add prducts to your bundle, you can search the products by name or by order number.
- **Quantity (2):** Enter the desired quantity for the added product here.
- **Configurator product and configurable (3):** Here you can edit, wheather or not the customer can choose from all variants of the added product.
- **Prices (4):** This is the price of each product and the sum of the whole bundle for every customergroup without any discount.
- Action buttons (5): Using this buttons you can delete the desired product from the bundle or open its detail window.

#### Prices



- Add price (1): Choose a customergroup from the dropdown to set a price for it.
- **Product price (2):** This means the price on the whole bundle without any discount.
- **Discount (3):** If it is a percentage discount, you can define the value here.
- **End price (4):** This is the calculated End price, which is used as the purchase price in the storefront. If it is an absolute discount, you can determine the discount value by entering the End price.

#### **Customer groups**



- Add customer group (1): Use this dropdown to add a customer group, which should be able to buy the bundle.
- **Customer groups (2):** The selected customergroups will be able to buy this bundle.

#### **Limit variants**



- Add variant (1): When your main product is a variant product, you can add the variants here, for which the bundle should be available.
- **Product number (2):** Here are all variants listed, for which the bundle is active. If you don't have a variant added, the bundle is active for all variants.
- Additional text (3): Here the variants additional text is displayed, so that you can directly see, which variant it is.

### Description

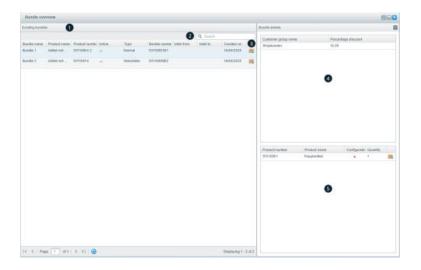
Total Party Delevant Internet Designation	
이 이 B 2 E Fotios + ▲ + 臣臣 著著著 (2 曲 0 2	9
Pell p	
	Lorent Same bandle

Here you can enter a description for your bundle, this

description is displayed in the frontend.

## **Product bundle overview**

Using the product bundle overview you can directly see all your created bundles. You can find the product bundle overview in the backend under **Items > Product bundle overview**.



• **Existing bundles (1):** In this overview you can see all exisiting bundles with their most important information. This module is not able to edit this bundles, it's just an overview. You can click a bundle to see further details on the right hand side.

- Search (2): If you have a lot of bundles you can use the search to find your desired bundle.
- Edit (3): Using this button you can open the product to edit the bundle.
- **Bundle prices (4):** After selceting a bundle you will see the customer group prices for this bundle here.
- **Bundle products (5):** After selcting a bundle you will see all bundled products.Clicking the little buton on the right you can edit this product.

## **Bundle in the frontend**

A selectable bundle in the frontend:

we maney with our bun	die offer:	96
		C237.98 + transact at C270.08.* Price for all:
	<u>N</u>	Add to shopping cart >
	white - Shopware Fastion - (259.69 *	
Ready to this today, Delivery time appr. 1-3	and the second se	
	unavalala.	
Design:		
Standard		
1x Emmelsamp sider	Squaeux - Shopvere Faction - 1019.99 *	
Ready to ship roday.		
	workslags	

#### A normal bundle in the frontend:

ave	money with our bundle offer:		96
		€412.21 * Instance of C-05400 * Price for all:	
1	ÜL	Add to shopping cart	2
	ta Anthel exit Sendard Kanfigurate - Dispuse Freetow - 423.00 * Realy to thigh today. Debuty time appl. 1.3 workdays Ausstattung:		
	Half - Stoppart Freedore - 6459.95 *		
3			

## **Bundle restrictions**

- Bundles cannot combined with products which have an activated pricegroup.
- Liveshopping prices will be ignored at buying a bundle. The bundle will always use the default product price.
- When products with different VAT rates are combined, the VAT will not be designated correctly. We recommend to not bundle products with different VAT rates.

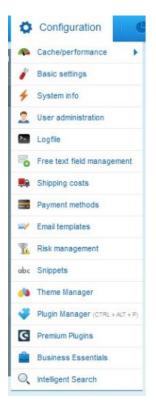
# **Plugin: Business Essentials**

## **Purchase & installation**

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

## The module

The module itself can be found under **Configuration > Business Essentials** in your Shopware backend. This is where you can approve requests, make basic configurations and define template variables.



When the module is open, you will immediately see the window where you can manage all requests.

### **Request management**

Within the requests management section, you can see all requests, the status of each and are able to edit individual entries. This is meant to be an overview of all requests, and therefore takes into account every registered customer group:

Report to aprent 2005	aufinti lensi	att variables						
		0	wareste 🔅 Parctino	unde .	Q.	Search		
Advants the Thir by stoking the so the black A chrysted Thirs will be to MG controlor.	erding ekad with an +	C 098 C 05/12/2 C 05/12/2 C 05/12/2 C 06/12/2	Customer Test Tester Tesse Test John Dos	Company Shapware AG Test company Shapware AG	Costoner prop 508 / Reseller 508 / Reseller 508 / Reseller	Shop Vali s Vali s Vali s	ololol	

In the filter area located to the left of the window, you can filter the list of registrations by date, shop and customer group (for customers who have already been assigned to a group). Clicking on **Apply filters** will update the list, whereas **Reset filters** will deactivate the applied filters.

### Activate / reject customers

You can either activate or reject customers individually by clicking the + or - icons "*or*" in groups by selecting multiple entries at once and using the buttons located at the top of the window.

The customer(s) then automatically receive a preconfigured email that notifies them if they have been accepted or rejected.

### Configuration

The following describes the configuration options available for your B2B shop.

Customer group registration

Under **Customer group registration**, you can find registrations for a specific customer group, which can appear different depending on the customer group and which customers have registered. **Note:** the information you provide here applies to the customer group for which your customer is registered (i.e. dealer customer group H).

sliner group regilization 🔤 Pierade S	(equina	
Description		
	er yns oer ansoger the getsy mennanty mynending or M staat te be ofsylstynel he regestration	the elegation of the a specific continue prior, the contents rate to compare to the a principal configuration. Performency we fair choice the conditional lengths for the 
Configuration		
		After saving the first loss time a livit will be displayed here the observation memory and the adapted
Advanced settings		

In order to define settings, you must first select a customer group from the dropdown menu at the top of the window.

ess Essentiats			
el manyment Conference	Serginic caralies		
Rassler 🐱 Aler	customer groups can be added in the aeth	nga under 15hop settings in Gustioner grouper.	
-			
taner your nystriden 🔪 Buah D	No. 1		_
Description			
		er prouple. After registering for a specific customer group, the customer can be assigned to it unding on the selected configuration. Furthermore you can choose the used emet/lemplate for	
registration and assign a custom temp	slate to be displayed as registration.		
The regarded in he this cash one	a deserve of squares in grant		
Configuration			
Custom registrations require a manual activation to the	Link to registra		
backend:		the carepton this link onto a stop offer the events in	
Assigned castomer group until	Default		
activation:			
Template for the registration page:	C		
	The tempote file must be placed in the	Provinsionalization, generation to participation and environationals	
Advanced settings			
Email template for confirmation:	Commission-commis		
	4		
Email template for rejection			
			50

### You can now make the following settings for this customer group:

- **Custom registrations require a manual activation in the backend:** When active, registrations for this customer group have to be approved manually.
- Link to registration: After saving your settings, an individual link will appear, which potential customers can use to register for this specific customer group.
- Assigned customer group until activation: Define the customer group that the customer is
  automatically assigned to until they are approved (or will remain if they are rejected). It's important
  that you select a group that's different from the group the customer is trying to register for.
- **Template for the registration page:** Here you have the option of creating an individual registration page. Just place your tpl file in your theme directory under "frontend/register" and name the file (i.e. pslogin.tpl). **Note:** This template file is only used when the customer group registration itself is called! A separate file is required for the private shopping splash page.

### Advanced settings:

- **Email template for confirmation:** If this field is left empty, the default email template sCUSTOMERGROUPHACCEPTED is used.
- **Email template for rejection:** If this field is left empty, the default template sCUSTOMERGROUPHREJECTED is used.

Screenshots are not used in this example because in this configuration, the standard registration / login is used and only the URL is different. After being approved, the customer is reassigned to the dedicated customer group.

### **Private Shopping**

With Private Shopping, you can create a splash page that acts as a gatekeeper to your shop. Only customers who have been accepted and provided with login criteria are allowed to enter your shop.

unt mitigener Colgenser	Tergade susans	
	custimer proge can be added in the settings under 'Shap settings - Customer groups'	
Contraining Cog in patternin Builde S	recom.	
Destruction		
	our index stores of second is sufficient of the stores with a dependent it privates are satisfied as more repeated on a source page for the co- signaturation does not be accompany investigation and the Additionality particular documentation does at the stores and attributions when	
Configuration		
Template configuration		
Advanced settings		

In order to change the settings, first select a customer group from the dropdown menu at the top of the window. **Note:** In general, these settings only make sense for standard customer groups, since customers of other customer groups have typically already been approved.

• / Ann	company faceba ca	n be added in the pettin	11 in ore	and secolds + 0	nonce barbs		
New good regulation Rivers	tepping						
Description							
Private stopping allows you to fock y Depending on the configuration, the r toggest in							
Enable central login page for the	frontendt						
Configuration							
Offer registration on login page:		Dise the following page:	g regist	ration			
Automatically enable shop after registration:							
Template configuration							
Nain theme after successful registration	Deste character	a templata					
Template for the login page:	(angeigt		_				
	The teriodate Its	must be placed in the	Trees	implife" (Heldory)	to be hunded autom	ally elly	
Advanced settings							
Controller / Action after successful logim	ALLASTA			Additional peram diogin-iredirectio		1	Chicose
Controller   Action after				Additional param		1+	
saccessful registration	41124120-004			(registration-)rec			12 hAllow
Authorized controllers / s	ites						
Here you can configure contr activating private snopping	silers / piles that an	e accessible despite		Controller / sites			
				Controller	Name		
Controller / attes:				-cuators torms	Shapebee Forms		2
		and the second					

### Here you have the following options:

- Enable central login page for the frontend: This setting creates a central login page for the shop so that visitors cannot browse through your categories and products.
- Offer registration on login page: When active, visitors are able to register directly on the login page.
- **Use the following registration page:** Select the group the customer will be assigned to once they register. Depending on the configuration of the "customer group registration", the customer will be granted immediate access or have to be manually approved before they can enter the shop.
- Automatically enable shop after registration: When activated, the customer can access the shop immediately after registering, regardless if they have been approved or not.
- **Main theme after successful registration:** Here you can define the theme that should be used after successful registration. If no theme is selected, the standard shop theme will be used.
- **Template for the login page:** In contrast to the registration page, here you can specify a template file that should be used for the splash page. **Note:** The splash page cannot use the same template file as the customer group registration page.

### Advanced settings:

- **Controller / Action after successful login:** Here you can define the controller / action that should be called after logging in (i.e. account/index for the account).
- **Controller / Action after successful registration:** Here you can define the controller / action that should be called after registration (i.e. account/index for the account).
- Additional parameters for the (login-)redirection: Here you can specify the URL parameters for the redirection after logging in. Click Choose and enter the parameter. Example: If you want to forward the customer to a specific category, enter listing/index and enter "sCategory" as the name

and the category ID as the value. You can add more parameters, which the module automatically links with a "&".

Additional parameters for the (register-)redirection: Here you can specify the URL parameters for the redirection after registration. Click Choose and enter the parameter. Example: If you want to forward the customer to a specific category, enter listing/index and enter "sCategory" as the name and the category ID as the value. You can add more parameters, which the module automatically links with a "&".

Parameter	details	
Name:		
Value:		
		Add
Parameters		
Name	Value	Actions
You can defi	ne further narameters for the n	edirection in this
You can defi window.	ne further parameters for the r	edirection in this

### Authorized controllers / sites:

Here you can define which controllers remain accessible on the splash page, which ensures that legal notice (shop sites) and contact form (forms) still function without the customer having to log in. By default, "Shop sites" and "Forms" are active.

If you want to display the contact form you must add the site "Ticket/Support".

### **Template variables**

Template variables can be used to simplify your work. **Example:** While you would like to manually approve your customers, you would also like to make it possible for them to enter the shop after registering, but without access to prices or purchasing functionalities. This is where template variables come to your aid: they can be used to blur out prices and particular functionalities prior to customer approval.

Suminens Essentials			88
Region Configuration Conjude calabia			
Description			
The template variable configuration provides the function to o to show specific densitiate elements only for customers assign The HTTP cache comparisonity has to be imple	ed to the selected customer group.		
empire variables			
Add ten		Q former	
Variable Description	Customer proces		
GioProwWhodActivat.	B2B / Resoler +		0/
4 4 Roge 1 off P P 3		Terms per gage:	20 hores

You can now add all desired variables by clicking Add item.

Template variable details	
Name of the variable:	
Description:	
Customer groups	
Select customer group	•
Name	
Here you can define customer groups t is active (bool: true).	or which the variable
Cancel	Save

Enter the name here (which you can use to find the variable later), a description (if necessary) and define the customer group(s) for which the variable should be "true".

Template variable det	ails	
Name of the variable: Description:	noPricesWithoutActi	vation
Customer groups		
Select customer group		•
Name		1
B2B / Reseller		0
Here you can define cu is active (bool: true).	stomer groups for wh	ich the variable
	Cancel	Save

The variable is now available everywhere in your template and ready to be used.

## **Tips & Tricks**

### Template adjustment: Prices not displayed before approval

The following template adjustments are only examples – please do not make these changes unless you have the necessary knowledge on how to properly make template adjustments. These changes are not covered by support.

Do not make any changes to the standard theme! Instead, always use a separate theme that derives from the standard theme.

For more information on how to customize the template, please visit our Shopware Theme Guide.

The examples are based on a separately developed theme. Further information on template adjustments can be found in our wiki Tutorial: Making changes in the template.

In order to implement the template variables described above and hide the price and purchase functionality, the following changes have to be made:

Detail page

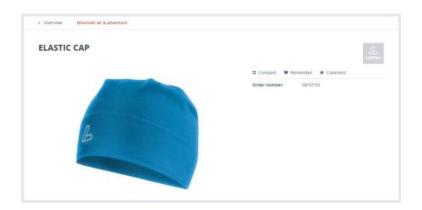
### Purchase button on the detail page: detail/index.tpl

```
{extends file="parent:frontend/detail/index.tpl"}
{block name="frontend_detail_index_buybox"}
{if $noPricesWithoutActivation == true}
{$smarty.block.parent}
{/if}
{/block}
```

### Price and delivery information on the detail page: detail/data.tpl

```
{extends file="parent:frontend/detail/data.tpl"}
{block name="frontend_detail_data"}
    {if $noPricesWithoutActivation == true}
    {$smarty.block.parent}
    {/if}
    {/block}
```

**Result:** 

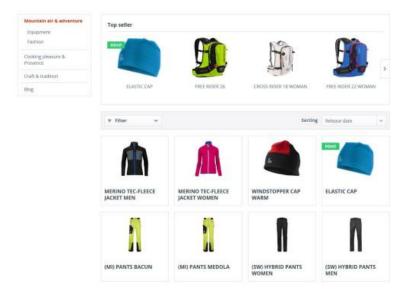


Listing

### Price in listing / slider: frontend/listing/product-box/box-basic.tpl

```
{extends file="parent:frontend/listing/product-box/box-basic.tpl"}
{block name='frontend_listing_box_article_price_info'}
{if $noPricesWithoutActivation == true}
{smarty.block.parent}
{/if}
{/block}
```

**Result:** 



## **Custom Products**

The Plugin "Custom Products (v2)" provides you the opportunity to design articles completely customizable. This is important for all articles, whereby variants aren't sufficient. These articles can be configured individually, e.g. articles with names printed on them. The "v2" in the title of this plugin signifies that the plugin "Custom products" is available in a new version. In this documentation we would like to explain how to install and configure it as you wish.

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

## Migration of the data of the first version of Custom Products

	stom Products - Template overview			860
Migrate	n 🗿 Add ilem	O Delate al agregant		Q Seeth.
internal	name	Display name	Producta	Options
Alte Tes	tgruppe_3044a474e0.	Alte Testgruppe	1	13 🔵 🖊 🔘

If you already used the first version of "Custom Products", your're able to migrate your groups and options to the new version. Concerning this, you can find the button "**Migration**" (1)

į,	ustom Products - Mig	ration	
4	Name	Description	
	Atte Testgruppe	Dies ist die "Vorlage", die ich mit dem alten Custom Products er	rstellt habe.
		2 Start migration now	
		ition ready created in Custom Products can be imported into the r prate , Depending on what you've already created, the data m	
		, you only have to provide the VAT rate (after migration, the sta entage prices cannot be migrated and are set as fixed prices	
		stom Products has been adjusted, you only have to activate the ou can continue selling.	ne groups /

After clicking this button, the following window will be opened. All those groups are listed there, which you can carry into the new version of the plugin (1). After you choose the desired groups to migrate, you can begin it with a click on "Start migration now" (2). In the process, you can set if you'd like to hide the migration button after these steps (3).

ation progress Success Name Alte Testgruppe 3			
Success Name			
	Igration progress		
Alte Testgruppe 3	Success Name		
	1 🗸 Atte Te	tgruppe	3 🌘
2	2		
-			

In the ensuing overview you can control the progress and result of the migration. There, a progress bar signalizes the progress of the migration (1). In the area "Migration progress" you can see if your group were migrated successfully (2). If something happens during migration, that requires your attention, it can be examined in a concurrent log by clicking the corresponding icon (3).

If the migration was successfully, you can find your created template in the overview of the new "Custom Products" module. Concerning the settings of the orders, which was completed with the old version before: You can read the details of this orders in the internal comment of them.

Please remember at all costs to check the migration on a test system beforehand and to create a backup of your data at any rate, before starting this migration. This way, you're able to react quickly in a possible case of an error.

The first and second version of the plugin "Custom Products" can cause side effects if they're both installed at the same time. Because of this reason, please notice that the first version should be deinstalled and the chache should be cleared to ensure the functionality.

If you import or export article data, the options will not assign automatically!

## The configuration of the plugin

As a first step, it might be useful to familiarise with the configuration of the plugin. Similar to the old version, some settings are required to integrate the plugin optimally. These settings are located in the plugin manager, as you open the plugin to edit or under **Configuration > Basic settings > Additional Settings > Custom Products (v2)**.

Unitable of the Content Perchaster	0.1	- 6
Alidity of the Custom Products onfigurations:		
lide the migration button:	2 No	- 0

At this place, you can edit the following settings:

- Validity of the Custom Products Configurations (1) : You can define here, how long (in days) the configurations of the articles should be saved in your shop. More information about this topic can be found in the next paragraph.
- **Hide the migration button (2)** : At this point, you can hide or show the migration button as you wish.

### Validity of the Custom Products Configurations

In the plugin "Custom Products", the particular configurations of the articles (or the exact configuration of the articles by your customers) will be saved in your shop for a particular time. These configurations can be called up via nan alphanumeric value that's added to the link of the corresponding article. This way, the customer is able to call his configuration up and to forward it to others.

These configurations are stored in your database and can be removed after the particular timespan by the cronjob "CustomProducts Hash GarbageCollector". To define this timespan, you can use the corresponding setting.

You have to configure the cronjob first, so that it runs correctly. Thereto, the activation of the plugin "Cron" is necessary. Detailed information about the configuration and usage of Cronjobs can be found here.

## **First steps**

When you open the plugin, the following window will be opened:

	Add Item 🔵 Delette	al aviented 2	(	Q Search .		
	Internal name	Display name	Products	Options		
0	voilaget	Allgemine Vortage	2	15	0/	0
0	vorlage2	Artikel-Vorlege	1	1	0/	0
0	Vorlage3	Pflicht-Vorlage	1	7	0/	0
0	vorlage4	Doku-Vorlage	1	14	0/	0
ū	vorlage5	Exmalpreis-Vorlage	2	15	0/	0
0	vorlagell	Standardwerte und Aufschläge	0	15	0/	0

In this overview you can find all templates, that were created before **(4)**. This overview will be empty of course, if you open the plugin the first time. Via the button **"Add item" (1)** you're able to create new templates, while using **"Delete all selected" (2)** will remove all selected templates. Using the search bar **(3)**, you can find your favourite template easily. In addition, you may delete single template, open them to edit or copy them by using the corresponding icons **(5)**.

### **Templates and options**

Configuration Product												
0 0	0											0
Display name:												0
Description:	20	в г ⊒	Font Size		<u>A.</u> =	E JE	6 8	а	ø 13	2	0 x*	
	Path: p											
mage:		Select media										
	*	Reset media	2	serry, no picture								
letive:												
Step-by-step mode:												0
The user is obligated to confirm their input:												
Place variants above options:												
											s	ave

The windows to create a template is divided in three areas: "Configuration"(1), "Products" (2) and "Options" (3).

### Configuration

At this point, you define the basic settings of your template. These settings can be defined here:

													0
													0
20	в 1	¥	Font Size		<u>.</u>	•	II II	Æ	8 8	ø	1 🔿	0	<i>.</i>
Path: p													A
-	Select	modia											
~	Reset	media		servy. no pictu	*								
0													
0													0
0													
00													
	Path: p	Portr. p Solocci Resolution	Pertr. p Select media Report media	Pertr. p Select media Recef media	Porte p	Port: p  Select media  Record media  Port: p	Parts p	Perfix p  Soloci media  Report media  Soloci	Pertr. p	Pertr. p	Port: p  Por	Pertr. p	Pertr. p

• **Internal name (1)**: This is the internal name of the template, which is used to its identification. Therefore, it has to be unique.

- **Display name (2)**: Here you can set the name of the template, which will serve as the name displayed in the frontend. This name will be displaed in all articles connected to this template and in the checkout.
- **Description (3)**: This description can be put to use if you want to display further information in your template.
- Image (4): At this point you can provide an image, that will be displayed in the template as well.
- Active (5): Here it will be defined, if the template is active or not and will be shown in your article according to this.
- **Step-by-Step mode (6)**: In this place, you can enable the Step-by-Step mode for your template. You can find further information on this topic in the paragraph "Step-by-Step mode"
- The user is obligated to confirm their input (7): Here you can activate the possibility of a confirmation about the correctness of the details of the customer's configuration. This means, that the customer has to confirm that his configuration and all its data is correct. Otherwise he's not able to proceed to the checkout. You can find more information about that in the corresponding paragraph of this documentation.
- Show variants above options (8): For variant articles, you can specify here whether the variants of a product should be displayed above the options of the custom product. If the checkbox is not activated, they will be displayed under the Custom Products options.

In this new version, it's possible to add the articles in the Custom Products templates directly. This is implemented in the tab "Products". The following view will be provided to you:

Edit template - vorlage4		_	882
Configuration Products Options			
Search for: 1			
Schüssekasten	Product number SW10072		
		Gancel	Save

Via the **search filed (1)** the desired articles can be found over their names or article numbers. Via one mouse click, you add these articles to your template.

### To add an option to your template

In the third tab "Options", you can assign the options to your template and to your articles, accordingly. This way, you provide the possibility to individualize the articles. This tab is constructed as following:

🔾 Add fem 🔅 Delete xl enected 2		Q Terrat
🖂 = Name	Туре	
🔄 = Text	Text	0/
📋 🖛 Textbereich	Text arms	0/
🔄 🖛 farbauswahi	Select color	0/
🖸 🗝 Nummer	Number field	0/
Checkbox	Checkbox	0/
🖸 = Drapđown	Cambobox	0/
🖂 🗕 Muttaelect.	Muttaslect	0/
📋 = Einfachauswahi	Radio welect	0/
📋 = Bidauswahl	Select image	0/
📋 = Date-Upload	File upload	0/
Eld-Optoad	Inage upload	000000000000000000000000000000000000000
🗋 = Zet	Time field	0/
🖂 = Datum	Date field	0/
🔄 = HTVL-Text	HTML editor	0/

Similar to the overview over the templates, all available option will be displayed at this point. When clicking "Add item" (1) you have the possibility to add new options to the tepmalte as well as to delete selected options via the button "Delete all selected (2)". In addition, you open your option to edit them or delete a particular option via the familiar buttons. By the way, you can edit the name of your option only by clicking it and alter the order of your options by drag and drop.

If you like to add new options, the following window will be opened, with five options of configuration:

Create option																					
Name:	0																				
Description:	0	2	9	в	1	Ш	Font Size	-	A	•	ŧΞ	IΞ	-	100	-	ø	n	-	0	2	
		Path:	p																		
Туре:	0																				*
Order number:	0																				
Required field:	0																				
Collapse:	0																				

At this point, you're able to set the following, first information:

- Name (1): This name will be the title of the option, that appears in the frontend.
- **Description (2)**: Here you can record your description for this option.
- **Type (3)**: This is the type, that the option occupies. As soon as you took your pick here, further settings for your option will be loaded. More information on this option types and their possibilities can be seen in the process of this paragraph and the paragraph "Different option types".
- Order number (4): In this field, you can define the order number of this option.
- Required field (5): In this setting, you can determine if this option is obligatory for the customer. If
  this setting is active, the customer is only able to proceed to the checkout, if he already effected an
  input in this option.+
- **Collaps (6):** The customer needs to epand the field in order to make a selection, please note that this option is only available if it's a **required field (5)**.

Once you choose an option type, additional possibilities to configure the option will be provided. These possibilities can differ between these options. Using the example of a checkbox, the window for configuring the option looks like this:

	Customer group:					*
	Suncharge	Tax rate	Customer group			
	10.00E	19%	Shopkunden			
	0					
Selectable values	Y					
	Y		Default value	Surcharge once		
Selectable values	Y		Detaut value gr	Surcharge coce	0	/
Add 3	Y				0.0	//
Selectable values Add Add Name Ja	Y		*	×	00	//

- **Prices (1)**: In this area, you can provide the surcharges for the option. This surcharge can be defined depending on the customer group and have a particular tax rate.
- **Surcharge once (2)**: Which this checkbox, you can set if the surcharges should be calculated once. If you set this active, the customer has to pay the surcharge just one time, independent of the amount of the article.
- Add (3): You create and add the values of the checkbox here. More information about this procedure are located in the paragraph "Defining values"

### **Different option types**

**Text**: Using this type, you create a simple text field, in which the customer places small texts.

**Text area**: In option of this types, simple but more larger texts can be entered.

**Number field**: In this field, only numbers can be entered. For options like this, a minimum and maximum value as well as an interval can be configured.

**Checkbox**: With this option you can provide multiple, prefabricated possibilities to choose, which will be displayed with a checkbox in your frontend. In this case, the customer can choose one or more values.

**Combobox**: In this option, you can provide a menu to expand, in which the customer can choose his answer by clicking one of the entries.

**Multiselect**: In this display format, you can show one or more possible values to the customer, which will be presented in a multiselect. The entries in it can be selected by clicking, multiple selection is possible by using the CRTL-key while selecting.

**Radio select** : Via this option you can let the customer choose between various values, while allowing just one selection.

**Select colour**: You can configure a colour selection via this option.

**Select image**: At this point you can provide various image to the customer, so he can choose one or more from them. These images have to be uploaded via the media manager.

**File upload**: Using this type, you're able to allow your customers to upload various files. Correlating, you can decide in the backend over the size and amount of files that can be uploaded. In general, the following file types are permitted: png, jpg, jpeg, tiff, svg, gif, txt, ai, eps, pdf.

**Image upload**: Via this optiontype, only images can be uploaded. Similar to the file-upload, you can define the amount and size of the uploaded files.

**Date field**: Here you can make it possible for the customers to name a date. By the way, it's possible to configure a day interval.

**Time field**: Via this option type, you can provide a time input in your article. Here, it's also possible to set a timespan.

**HTML editor**: Using this type, you 're able to add a HTML-editor to your article, which makes a formatted text input possible.

### **Defining values**

Some of these option types require prefectured input possibilities, between which the customer can choose later in the article. Because of this fact you get the possibility to add values in these affected options. This

occurs in the following window:

Edit / Create				800
Name:	D			
Order number	2			
Default value:	3			
Prices:	Customer group:			•
	Surcharge	Tax rate	Customer group	
	0.00E	19%	Shopkunden	
Surcharge once:	3 🗆			

- **Name (1)**: This is the name of the value, which will be provided as a possible choice in the frontend.
- Order number (2): Via this field, you're able to assign an order number to the field.
- **Default value (3)**: If you like to set a preset value, you can define the corresponding default value here.
- **Prices (4)**: At this point, you can define a surcharge for your value, similar to the options.
- Surcharge once (5): If the surcharge of the value should be calculated once, you can set this here.

Using "**Apply**", the value will be inherited into the option. If you want to discard the value, you can leave the window over "**Cancel**".

### Step-by-Step Mode

You can activate the so-called "Step-by-Step mode" in your template. This brings a completely new display format along. In this mode, the configuration can be done step by step, similar to a possibility of a shopping advisor. It looks like this in the frontend:

ige selection ** (+ €10.00 / Unit)		Un	it price	
shopware	shopware	Ci Tr Bi	sie price heckbox ext extbereich Ildauswahl atum	€8.99* €10.00* €10.00* €10.00* €10.00* €10.00*
reset		On	al / unit	€58,99*
		Tot	al / once	

The customer is able to click though the configuration gradually or rotate freely between these options. If the customer is satisfied with his configuration, he can attach it to the article by clicking "Assume configuration" and add the article to the checkout as usual.

The user is obligated to confirm their input

To protect yourself against incorrect data by the customer, the plugin provides an opportunity to let the customer confirm his inputs before he proceeds to the checkout. Therefore you can activate the setting "The user is obligated to confirm their input". In this case, the customer must confirm the correctness of his inputs. Otherwise, he is not able to continue his order.

tion 1	
otion 2	
set	More information
eset configuration	
eset configuration	

### Connecting the template out of the article

You can create or edit a template out of the article module as well. Therefore you find an area for Custom Products in the tab "Basic info".

If the article has already a template connected to it, this template is mentioned next to "**Custom Product template**" (1). Using the button "**Configure now** "(2), you can edit the template. If the article doesn't have a template yet, you can create one using the same button. A click on it leads you to the Custom Products module.

## **Custom Products in the Frontend: To buy an individual article**

In this paragraph, we want to show you how this whole configuration looks like in the frontend. To show an example, we created an article and furnished it with options. Thus, a configured article can look like this in the frontend, if step-by-step mode isn't set active:

Schlüsselkasten	and a second
	
	Text (+ 10,00 € / Stück*) ~
	Textbereich (+ 10,00 & / Stück*)
	Ferbeuswahl (+ 10,00 € / Scück*)
	Nummer (+ 10,00 € / Stück*)

If you click on "Add to shopping cart", the article can be bought without configuration, as long as you didn't define any required fields. If some required fields are defines, the customer gets a hint on which inputs are missing. If surcharges are set for some options, they will be shown in the article as soon as the the customer configures the corresponding options. This overview over the prices is divided up in unit - or once prices.

After the article is configured as the customer wishes, he can add it to his shopping cart. This looks as following:

Product		Quantity	Price per unit	Sum
	Grapes battery Order number SW00040 Delivery time approx. 5 working days	1 -	63.52*	45.97*
	Surcharges: Chaolasi (* 616.00 / antri). Ja			¢70.00*
	Hoppy Incides/(= £12.06 / unit*) Facturation (= £10.06 / unit*) Rot			
	Elisteurovani (* 650,80 / usis*) 582 1 Nummer:			
	3 (+ 410,00 / wilk*) Datum 2 ( hz 2010 (- 418.00 / wilt*)			
	Systemation) And all best without (* \$16.007 unit*)			
	Open configuration a		Order se	ubtotal: 678.99*
%	Basket discount			42.00*

The separate configuration will be displayed as own positions in the shopping cart so that the customer gets the best overview over the configuration of his articles. In addition, he can open his configuration again using "Open configuration". The further checkout processes as usual.

## Overview of the order positions in the backend

In the order positions of a finished order, you can read the configuration of the customer's article. Therefore you can open an overview over the selected options by clicking the **Custom Products icon (1)**.:

Ourrent Details	Commercialists Poster	u lareann	10 STIT	a holary				
🔾 Add 🛛 😂 Delete all s	relected							
Barn number	dent name	Quantity	Price	Total	Status	VAT	Stock	
Custom product: Schlü	sselkasten							
5W10072	Schlüsselkasten	1	69.99	69.99	Open	19%	- 84	0
1	Text	+	10.00	10.00	Open	19%		0 0
2 2 2	Textbereich	4	10.00	10.00	Open	1916	0	•
1	Farbeuswahl	1	10.00	10.00	Open	19%	0	0
1	Rot	1	0.00	0.00	Open	19%	0	•
1	Nummer	1	10.00	10,00	Open	19%	0	0
1	Checkbox	1	10.00	10.00	Open	19%	0	0
1	38	1	0.00	0.00	Open	19%	0	•
3	Bidauswahl	1	10.00	10.00	Open	19%	0	•
2 2	Bild 1	. 1	0.00	0.00	Open	19%	0	•
3	Deturn	1	10.00	10.00	Open	19%	8	0
Other positions								
SHIPPINGDISCOUNT	Warenkorbrabatt	1	-2.00	-2.00	Open	10%	0	0

This overview looks like the module from the following screenshot and contains all data of the customer so that the individualized article can be examined completely. Possible available files or images can be opened directly as well.

Custom Products detai	ts	86
Text	Alles Gutel	
Farbeuswahlt	Rot	-
Bildauswahl:	Bidauswahi	
	Bid 1	۲
Bummer:	3	
Datum:	2016-07-84	
Textbereich:	Wünsche ich dir	
Checkbox:	Checkbox	
	<u>la</u>	
		Close

### **Order documents**

In the document of the order, all options will be displayed as own positions, like it's the case in the shopping cart.

## eMail-Template sORDER

Via using the corresponding variables, it's possible to add the information for Custom Products to the email template sORDER. You can examine the available variables under "Variable Information".

The following example shows a position list of an html email, in which the CustomProducts information are displayed.

```
<table width="80%" border="0" style="font-family:Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif; font-size:10px;
  <strong>Artikel</strong><
   bgcolor="#F7F7F2" style="border-bottom:1px solid #cccccc;"><strong>Pos.</strong>
   <strong>Art-Nr.</strong><strong>Art-Nr.</strong><strong>Art-Nr.</strong>
   <strong>Preis</strong></t
   <strong>Summe</strong></t
  {foreach item=details key=position from=$sOrderDetails}
  {if !$details.swag_custom_product_original_mode}
  ≻

        {if $details.image.src.0 && $details.modus == 0}
      <img style="height: 57px;" height="57" src="{$details.image.src.0}" alt="{$details.a</pre>
   {$details.articlename|wordwrap:
```

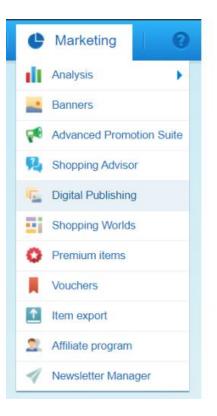
## **Plugin: Digital Publishing**

## Introduction

Utilising Digital Publishing, you can easily create attractive banners and scenic layouts without the need of external graphic software or HTML knowledge. This module helps to create banners containing HTML text or buttons, alongside images or coloured areas, all neatly organised in stackable layers, directly from your Shopware backend.

## Installation

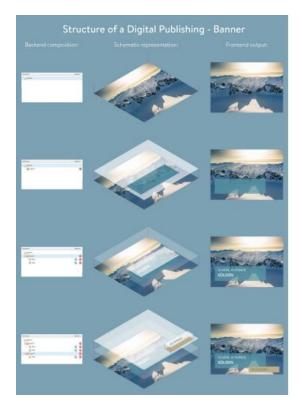
This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.



## **Basics**

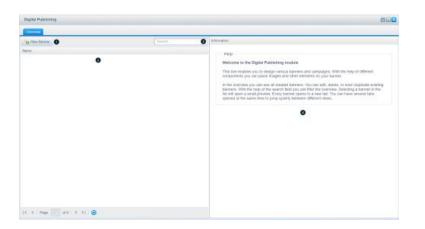
A banner created using Digital Publishing basically consists of three "working surfaces" lying on top of each other:

- First there is the *banner*. It holds the name, and can be assigned a background image or colour.
- You can create any number of *layers* within a banner. Layers do not have any impact on one another, as they are stacked over one another.
- A layer can contain any number of *elements* (texts/images/buttons). Elements behave relatively to each other; each element sharing the same layer is arranged in a separate row below the previous element.



## The module

Once opened, the module appears as follows:



- **New Banner (1):** Creates a new banner, which is also displayed in the tree view beneath.
- Banner list (2): All created banners are displayed here.
- Search (3): Search through the banner list by name.
- **Information / preview area (4):** After clicking on a banner, this section will display a preview of it. This also produces a template code, which can be tied into a template.

### **Creating a banner**

An unlabeled tab will open when you create a new banner. Once the banner is assigned a name, this tab will automatically adopt the assigned name.

The tab splits into two sections. The banner can be configured on the left-hand side; the preview on the right-hand side.

Coginal Publishing			896
Taxana Taxana D			
Lavied			0
Carport O			hermen 🖬 🖬 🗐
	Options		
The Unidential			
Seeg.			
0			
		0	
			CALL Sec

- **New layer (1):** Creates a new layer. A layer can contain different elements such as text, images or buttons.
- **New element (2):** Adds new elements to the active layer. This button can only be clicked if you are already working in a layer, as elements can only be placed within a layer.
- **Tree structure (3):** This section displays the layers and elements within the banner.
- Settings (4): The banner's basic settings, layers and/or elements are displayed here.
- **Preview (5):** Displays a preview of the banner. This preview updates automatically if you change settings or insert new elements. You can change the size of the preview window by adjusting the blue bars.
- **Test sizes (6):** Here you can find a couple of predefined device sizes and/or aspect ratios to quickly test your layout via the preview.

### The settings

### Banner

The banner is the fundamental surface of Digital Publishing. It specifies the framework for layers and elements and contains the background colour / image.

General setting	js	
Name:	Unlabled	
Background:	Image	
	Color	
Background	Image	
-	Select media	
<u></u>	Reset media	
	sorry, no picture	
Mode:	Cover	
Orientation:	000	
	000	

- Name: Defines the name of the banner.
- Background: Here you can choose between *image* and *color*.

### • image

With images, you can choose between the modes cover and repeat. With the latter, the image is repeated in its original dimensions, from top left to bottom right (equivalent to the CSS property *background-repeat: repeat*).

The cover mode is the equivalent to the CSS property *background-size: cover*. The focus orientation can also be defined for this mode.

### color

You have several options for defining a colour instead of a background image:

- Choose the colour (HEX value) using the colour selection tool
- Input colour values directly:
- HEX: #ef002f
- RGB / RGBA: rgb(45,221,156) / rgba(45,221,156,0.5) via the RGBA value you are able to make use of transparency levels. You simply add a transparency value between 0.0 an 1.0 to the initial RGB value: e.g. rgba(45,221,156,**0.5**)
- HSL / HSLA: hsl(0,100%,50%) / hsla(0,100%,50%,0.2) just like described above you can add a transparency value to the HSL figures.

### Layers

Layers are design surfaces that lie within the banner. One or several elements can be placed on each banner. Several layers can be stacked one on top of another; the order can be changed using drag & drop in the layer tree. You can define where elements are placed on the banner with the help of layers.

Layer settings		
Name:	New layer	
Position:	000	
	000	
	000	
Width:	auto	
Height:	auto	
	0 🗘	
Margin:		
	0	
Border radius:	0	;
Background:		
Link:	Search	16

- Name: Defines the name of the layer.
- Position:
- Width: The following options are possible here:
  - *auto*: The width of the layer is based on the elements contained within.
  - %: Banner width in percentage.
  - *px*: A specification in pixels corresponds to a maximum value. If the banner itself is not as wide, the layer width is automatically reduced.
- Height: Same as the options for width.
- **Margin:** Defines the margin of the layer to the banner edge in pixels. All the values can be adjusted at the same time by checking the "Link" option in the center.
- **Border radius:** Rounds all 4 corners down with a specific radius in pixels (corresponds with the CSS property *border-radius*).
- **Background:** The layer can be assigned a background colour. Here you have the same options as with the background colour of the banner itself:
  - Choose the colour (HEX value) using colour selection tool
  - Input colour values directly:
  - HEX: #ef002f
  - Make use of transparency values:
  - RGB / RGBA: *rgb*(45,221,156) / *rgba*(45,221,156,**0.5**)
  - HSL / HSLA: hsl(0,100%,50%) / hsla(0,100%,50%,0.2)
- **Link:** ;Here you can assign either a URL (starting with *http://*) or a product, using the integrated product search. In doing so, the whole level is assigned to the link.

### Elements

Elements always cover all of a layer's width and are added to a layer by stacking them on top of each other. You can arrange the elements' positions and order by using drag & drop in the layer tree. Additionally, moving elements between layers works the same way.

### Text

Text:		•
		_
Semantic:	Headline 1	-
Font family:	Open Sans -	0
Font size:	16	-0
Line height:	1	÷
Font color:	#FFFFFF	-
Orientation:		=
Font style:	□ B □ I □ ⊻ □	AA
Font style: Shadow color:		AA M
Shadow color:		AA 500
Shadow color: Shadow X:		**
Shadow color: Shadow X:		AA 5
Shadow color: Shadow X: Shadow Y:		AA []
Shadow X: Shadow Y:	•	AA •
Shadow color: Shadow X: Shadow Y: Shadow blur:		AA

- **Text:** The text that will appear on the banner is entered here. Click on the globe icon to translate the text into other languages.
- **Text-Typ:** Defines whether the text is output as *h1*, *h2*, *h3*, *p* or *blockquote*. This is relevant for the crawlers, making it possible "read" the banner and analyze the content.
- Font: Choose from the list of fonts or use your own font if it is stored in a theme.
- Font size: Font size in *px*.
- Adjust font size to device size: With the latest version of Digital Publishing (3.1.0) it is possible to scale text elements incrementally as well as dynamically. If this option is active the set font size gets grayed out and five new font size options appear.
- Scale dynamically: If this option is active, text sizes are continuously altered as the window size changes. If this is not active, font sizes will not change smoothly at the defined breakpoints, but almost "jump" from one size to the other.
- Mobile Portrait / Mobile Landscape / Tablet Portrait / Tablet Landscape / Desktop: These are the given options for breakpoints and device sizes.
- Line height: Line height as a factor for font size.
- **Font color:** Here you have the same options again as with the background colour of the banner.

- **Orientation:** Defines the text alignment. The options are left-aligned, center-aligned, right-aligned or justified (the same as CSS property *text-align: left/center/right/justify*).
- Font style: Converts the whole text element into bold, italic, underlined or block capitals.
- **Color shadow:** You can also define text shadows. The same options available for *Font color* also apply here.
- **Shadow X:** Moves the shadow to the x-axis, therefore horizontally. Value is in *px*; maximal values are +/-20.
- **Shadow Y:** Moves the shadow to the y-axis, therefore vertically. Value is in *px*; maximal values are +/-20.
- Shadow blur: Defines shadow blur in ;px.
- **Margin:** Defines the margin of the element to the layer edge and other elements within the layer. All values can be adjusted simultaneously by checking the "Link" icon in the center.
- **CSS classes:** You can place additional CSS classes within the element, i.e. to apply styles from your own theme.

### Button

Button setting	S	
Button Text:		
Туре:	Standard	-
Target:	Same page	-
Link:	Search	6
Orientation:	● ■ ○ ■ ○ ■	
	0	
Padding:		
	0	

- **Button text:** Define the text that appears on the button. Click the globe icon to translate the button text.
- **Type:** Defines the display, i.e. the highlight colour of the button. The styles are automatically taken from the theme's basic components.
- **Target:** Define whether the link opens on the same page or a separate page.
- **Link:** Assign either a URL (starting with *http://*) or a product by using the integrated product search.
- **Orientation:** Defines where the button is positioned on the layer.
- **Margin:** Defines the margin of the element to the layer edge and other elements within the layer. All values can be adjusted simultaneously by checking the "Link" icon in the center.

**CSS classes:** You can place additional CSS classes within the element, i.e. to apply styles from your own theme.

### Image

Image settings		
<b>A</b>	Select media	
-	Reset media	J
Alternative text:	sorry; ne picture	•
		-
Max width:	100	÷
Max height:	100	÷
nux mugne		
Orientation:	0 🐥	
	0 🜩	

- **Image selection:** & You can use an existing image from the Media Manager or upload a new image.
- **Alternative text:** Supplemental text, which is stored in source code.
- **Maximum width:** Value is expressed in pixels. If the banner or the layer is not as wide the image, the image will be adjusted proportionally to fit the width of the page.
- Maximum height: Value is expressed in pixels.
- **Orientation:** Defines the image's position on the layer.
- **Margin:** Defines the margin of the element to the layer edge and other elements within the layer. All values can be adjusted simultaneously by checking the "link" icon in the center.
- **CSS classes:** You can place additional CSS classes within the element, i.e. to apply styles from your own theme.

When defining background colours (i.e. on banners or layers) you can make use of colour gradients. However, be aware that not every browser is able to handle CSS gradients (especially older versions of Internet Explorer). You can learn more about CSS gradients here. To work with gradients, you just have to enter the colour values *without a semicolon*, i.e. linear-gradient (*to right*, #547faf 0%,#6bc6bf 100%).

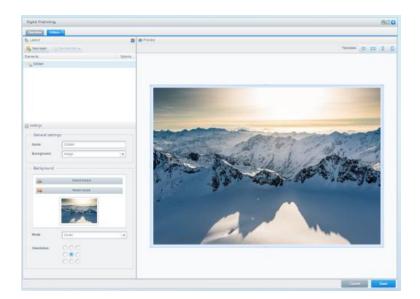
## Workflow example

We will now reconstruct the banner shown at the beginning of this article and test how it behaves in different sizes. This is to mimic the banner's behaviour on different devices.



### Step 1: create the banner

Click the **Unlabeled** banner first, assign a name and choose a background colour or image. In this example we are assigning an image, which we already uploaded into our Media Manager.



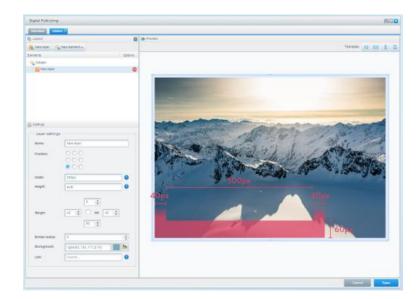
### Step 2: create the first layer

Now we create the first layer of our banner. This will be the turquoise box that acts as background for our main tagline.

Click **New layer** and set orientation to the lower-left corner of the banner. We now create a margin for the layer not being too close to the bottom or side of the background image. Set the maximum width to **500px** (it's important to include the unit (px) here). The maximum width will always be wider than the text contained within, however the size is ultimately determined by the text elements (which we will create in

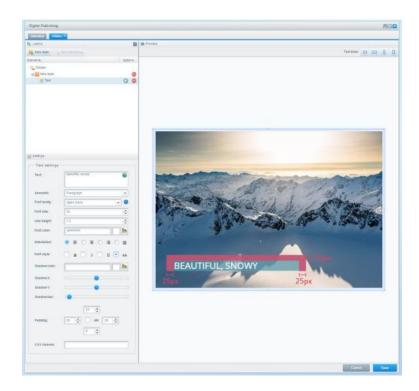
the next step). Set the margin to 40px on the sides and 60px on the bottom and assign the colour rgba(92, 154, 171,0.75).

Since the background won't appear until a text element is added, it makes sense to return to this page later and make final adjustments then, if required.



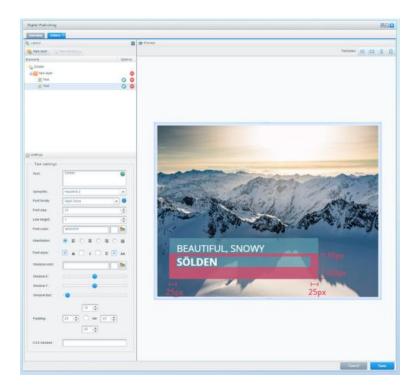
### Step 3: insert text element on the first layer

We now add the first text element and begin formatting the text. We recommend increasing the row height so that there is space between the text when it breaks towards the second row (in this example, we used 1.2). We will also adjust the padding so that the text has enough room within the element – 25px on the sides, 20px on the top. Now it might be feasible to test the text's behaviour in differtly sized output formats, by playing around with the image and closely watching the live preview.



### Step 4: insert second text element on the first layer

Here we follow the same procedure used for the first text element, only that the margins-differs so that it appears lower on the banner. We set the padding to: *10px on the top*, *25px on the sides* and *40px on the bottom*.

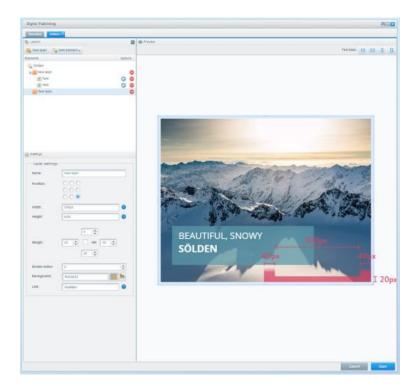


When you change the width of the banner in the preview, you can see how the banner behaves in smaller sizes and how the text wraps or breaks.



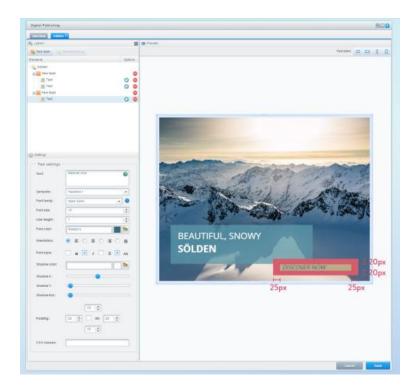
### Step 5: create the second layer

The second layer is positioned at the bottom-right corner of the banner. Slightly lower than the first banner, but with the same padding as on the sides. This layer will be a call-to-action button, linking the customer to a specific category in the online shop. The background of this layer is set to *#bdab8a* with a maximum



### Step 6: insert text element on second layer

Here we add text once again, also with some space around the element. For this text element, we set the colour to #3e6b7cand set the margins to 20px on the top and bottom, 25px on the sides.



Step 7: test & save banner

With the help of the live preview, you can now test how the banner will behave in different sizes and make last-minute adjustments to perfect its final appearance. When everything is in place, you can finally save the banner and use it, for example, in Shopping Worlds.



## **Digital Publishing in Shopping Worlds**

The banner you just created can now be used e.g. in Shopping Worlds. Within the Shopping Worlds module, there are two elements which can be used to support your banner: **Digital Publishing** and **Digital Publishing Slider**. These basically have the same function as the **Banner** and **Banner Slider** elements, only that they support images taken from the Digital Publishing plugin.

### Extending the module

For users with programming experience, there are additional opportunities to develop the Digital Publishing module even further. More on that? See our wiki pages, e.g.: DevDocs.

# Plugin: Shopping Worlds Advanced / Storytelling

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

## **Basic principle**

Let's begin with the most important point: Storytelling – so to convey a compelling narrative – is done predominantly through the use of visuals. This means the story will be told with photos, videos or illustrations. Of course you can conjure rich emotions and images with text—just as a novel demonstrates—however we do not see this often on the internet, especially in the context of sales. This is because for narratives told with text, it could take the reader hours to gradually sink into the history and lives of the story and characters. Online sales does not have time on its side. The average amount of time a visitor spends on the landing page lingers around 20 seconds. If the first impression doesn't impress, this could be even shorter!

To build your shopping world, we will be using elements which focus on images: banners, banner sliders, Sideview and videos. This is because images are processed in split seconds and engage the viewer on multiple levels. With careful planning, you can use the power of images to captivate the visitor in a very short time. Therefore the focus of your shop will not be on the products alone, but rather their function and how they can provide value to the customer. With the additional information and content you create using Storytelling, you secure a stronger brand identity and encourage the customer to return to the shop.

### **Overview - what must be done?**

#### **Develop a story:**

- What do you want to convey to each target group?
- Which story do you want to tell?

#### Compile your images and content

- Collect photos / videos
- Arrange text, information and products

#### Design a blueprint:

- What should the different sections contain?
- What should the grid look like on which you build your story?
- Where should specific elements be placed?
- How should the individual elements behave?
- How should your shopping world appear on different devices?

#### Implementation in Shopware:

- Create a shopping world as "Type: Storytelling"
- Define the grid, assign a category and assign viewports where this shopping world will appear
- Create sections and fill them with content

• If necessary, duplicate and adjust the shopping world for different viewports

## **Develop a story**

In the first step, you need to consider the basic structure of your story. Should the content be displayed full screen, divided by chapters ("Type: Storytelling") or should the features of Storytelling—such as Quickview and Sideview—appear within the format of a classic shopping world ("Type: Classic shopping world") with resize/masonry effect?



There is no general rule of thumb when each type should be used—in fact, there are actually benefits to using both. However, two benefits are connected specifically to stories which are delivered in chapters ("Type: Storytelling"): firstly, users memorize stories notably better if the content is presented section wise; secondly, content can be best summarized when grouped in useful sections. As an example, a culinary shopping world could be called "Recipes", in which each section contains one recipe with instructions, images and the products required to make the recipe connected with a Sideview element. Grouped together, the visitor is given valuable information that can be quickly understood. Depending on the product range offered in the store, there are several scenarios in which telling a story through sections can be utilized to bring greater user experience. To strengthen the personality of the story, it also makes sense to plan the order of the sections, so that each section leads in to one another to build a complete story together. Returning to the example of the "Recipes", this shopping world covers a complete menu. For the appetizers (soup and salad), then the main course followed by a desert and digestive to cap off the meal. Just a small teaser precedes the whole story. A special spice section is inserted in the middle of the story to bring in a bit of contrast.

First you should consider both what you want to convey and to whom this story should be told. Should a single product or complete product rage be advertised? Should a product or product range be promoted through the story? Do you want to promote your company and strengthen your brand? Are you using a story to reach out to end customers or B2B customers? What is the age group and lifestyle of your target group?

Logically constructed stories infuse your products with value, which leads to deeper customer engagement. Of course, this method of engagement suits emotionally charged branches such as fashion, food, toys, etc., but even supposedly "dry" branches such as technical equipment, machinery and the like can stand out from the competition by means of storytelling. Take for example: a high-quality tool manufacturer. You can lead section by section through the company's history, sharing content that infuses the brand not only with high quality, but also tradition, stability, honesty and trust. What about steel parts manufacturers in the automotive industry? Even in the B2B sector a brand can stand out when supported by storytelling. In this case, the customer could be taken through the production process, beginning with the careful selection of raw material to the end stages of fine tuning and precision.

The following information deals expressly with the advantages of creating "Storytelling" shopping worlds.

#### To consider:

- What do you want to convey?
- What is the purpose of the story?
- Who is your target audience?
- What kind of story will most effectively reach your target audience?

## Compile your images and content

Storytelling naturally does very little without the necessary images. In this step you will collect the images and content that will create an atmosphere that compliments the products and story you want to tell. As the price tag for hiring a professional photographer can run into the thousands, few businesses have the resources to create original images for this product staging. Luckily there are several tools available so that you can easily work around this financial obstacle. For stores that sell products from a manufacturer, it is always worth a try to contact the manufacturer directly and request and product images or videos they might have available for you to use.

Another option is to use stock images /videos. There are numerous vendors that have tens of millions of photos available to be purchased. Among the largest and most popular include:.

- istockphoto.com
- shutterstock.com
- fotolia.com

Depending both the provider and quality / size of material, the range of prices span from very little to the hundreds. Discounts might be available depending on the form of payment (credit vs. subscription).

It is also possible to use free images for commercial use. This means you do not have to pay for the rights to use the image. There are dozens of websites which collect these images and make them available for this purpose. From an aesthetic standpoint, often times these are much more modern and exciting. The disadvantage is that these sites are often difficult to browse through and have significantly less material. It also might be difficult to find a series of photos which come from the same photo shoot (and therefore complement one another). Among the better known sources include:

- unsplash.com
- pexels.com
- gratisography.com

There are also numerous sources that compile an overview of the free stock websites (i.e. thesticks.im). The majority of images on these websites are subject to the Creative Commons Zero license (CCO), making them also completely free for commercial use. However, note that some images might require you source the original author. Should this be the case, you will be informed directly on the website.

**Worth mentioning:** you will find a combination of these options in our <u>Shopware 5 demo</u>. We made use of images provided by the manufacturer, purchased images as well as free stock images.

Now that you have your sources, consider the overarching theme and style of the images. Which images will grab the customer emotionally? The answer largely depends on the products that will be linked to the story and your target audience. Therefore you should consider not only the emotions and values traditionally associated with the products, but also the age and general life style of your target group.

Please note that this concept does not apply to product images (the actual images of the product, usually with a white background)—these are important for listings and detail pages, but not for storytelling. To detail this we can look into the categories "Mountain air & adventure" and "Cooking pleasure & Provence" in our demo store. The "Mountain air" category advertises skis, snowboards and the equipment to match a downhill adventure; "Cooking pleasure" highlights fish, spices and other culinary specialties.

**"Mountain air & adventure":** Ski & snowboarding is associated with action, adrenaline and shared experiences with friends. For some, this is also a life style and associated with values such as courage, freedom and power. The target audience is typically young / youthful in spirit and looking a memorable adrenaline rush. Therefore we chose to create a story with images that mirror these qualities –action images with high levels of movement and energy, people who are beaming with joy on the mountain, vistas with expansive views and rich contrasting colors.

"Cooking pleasure & Provence": In comparison, this category places the joy of cooking within a calm atmosphere that references evenings enjoying food in the company of close friends. We also chose to invoke the feeling of taking a relaxing trip in order to explore the palate of another culture, conveyed by images of regions with a particular culinary flair. As cooking is also associated with health, organic beauty, quality and tradition, we highlighted quiet images of ingredients and dishes that are reminiscent of a still life painting. When drafting our blue print, we wanted to use the form of storytelling to compliment the feeling of strolling through a market, looking for fresh produce.

This imagery can be strengthened even further when infused with additional content, such as information about ski ranges or ideas for recipes. When compiling the images for your story, you should simultaneously consider the products that will be linked to the story (either by image mapping, Sideview or as a standalone element in the story).

These are the basic components that we need to tell our story. You not only link emotions with your products but also offer customers added value and strengthen our brand identity, in such a way that would not be possible through impersonal marketplaces such as Amazon.

#### To dos:

• Compile the Images / videos / text / content / and products that you need to tell your story.

## Design a blueprint - what must be considered?

After creating a concept for your story and compiling the required images / content, you are ready to bring everything together in the design phase. At this point it makes sense to sketch a rough idea of the structure with pen and paper. If you are comfortable using Photoshop or other design programs, by all means take advantage of these tools. Decide at which story point you should use a specific image / banner / video and determine when you want to link your products using Sideview. At this stage it is also important to consider how the shopping world should behave on smartphones and tablets.

For this you must keep in mind that shopping worlds are built using a grid system. Pages can be divided into any number of rows and columns. When the type is set to Storytelling, each page is presented full screen with sections divided by percentiles. For example, if there are 4 lines and 3 columns per section, each row represents 25% of the total height and each column 33.3% of the total width:

ings Layo	ut Elements Free text fields	
Layout sett	ings	
Mode:	Storytelling	-
Template:	Standard	•
Chan to Him -	a attin aa	
Storytelling Rows per sec	80	÷
	tion: 4	÷
Rows per sec	tion: 4	<b>↓</b>
Rows per sec Grid setting	tion: 4	

	Webb Landecage 0 1 (3-4)	Tablet Portnall () (1) (1) (2)	Tablet Lambcope 0 1 0 C	Desktop (6 (a <sup>.0</sup>	_
33,3%		33,3%	1	3,3%	
					25%
					25%
					25%
					25%

Lines can be configured directly in the settings for every shopping world. For columns, you can either choose from one of the default layouts or create your own divisions in the expert settings. Please note: the settings for "Line Number" and "Cell height" have no influence when the type is set to "Storytelling", since they are already defined in the shopping world—this setting only applies for "Classic shopping worlds".

After saving your settings, the grid is ready to be filled with various image-based elements such as banners, Sideview, etc. Here you also have the option to expand an element so that it covers several cells. You should always keep responsivity in mind when deciding where to place an element. In most cases it makes sense to set up the shopping world differently for mobile devices. For example, if you have 4 different elements in a section that behave well on a large screen (or screen that is oriented horizontally), they will appear far too small and restricted on vertical displays, especially on a smartphone. Continuing with the example of a grid with 4 rows and 3 columns:

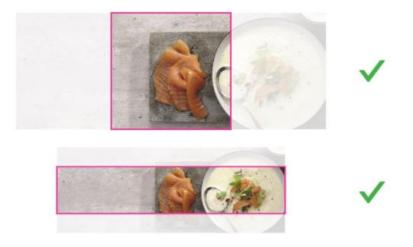


Without adjusting the shopping world for different viewports, an individual section filled with 4 elements (i.e. DigitalPublishing-Banner, Sideview, image or banner slider) would appear as follows:



Here you see the content is not displayed properly for mobile devices. Generally, simple images where the subject is framed in the center (such as the apple) will be properly displayed. However, images that contain text / a subject that is off-centered (such as the soup) must be adjusted in order to appear in the visible range of the grid. In order for background-images and banners to automatically adjust to the height and width of a cell, we are working with the cover method, which behaves like the CSS property background size: cover, therefore the aspect ratio is also maintained.

Important: cover effect in different element sizes:

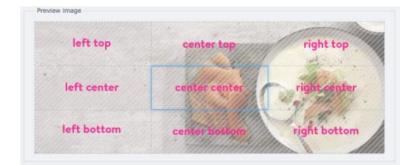


This is the safest option when creating well-rounded, seamless shopping worlds where neither the images are distorted on different devices nor the storytelling loses its affect due to unsightly empty spaces in the display.

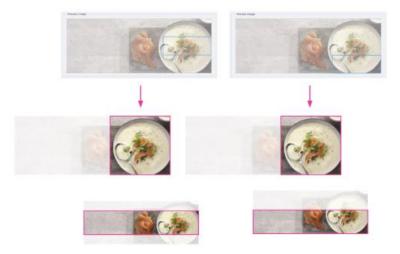


With the exception of HTML5 video, all simple image elements (banner, banner slider, Sideview) use the cover method. For DigitalPublishing-Elemnts, this can be configured in the banner itself. For HTML5 video elements, you can choose whether or not the cover method should apply (Video mode: Fill), or to take on the properties of one of the images shown above. We do not recommend "Video mode: Stretch", as this changes the aspect ratio distorts and the video (as shown in the image to the left). However, "Video mode: Scale" would work well, as any empty space is filled with black bars, as is the standard for YouTube videos.

For banner sliders, each slide is automatically scaled toward the center point. For simple banner and Sideview elements, you can define the direction in which the image should be scaled. This makes it possible to control the display so that the subject is always in view.



Here there are 9 areas to choose from. These correspond to the CSS properties **background position: top / bottom / left / center**. Without specifying a direction, the image will automatically scale toward the center point. See the following two examples, which have been assigned different targets:



The most important factors to consider when designing a responsive shopping world are grid fluidity and seamless behavior of the elements contained therein. There are thousands of different devices from which shopping worlds can be accessed, all of which may differ in terms of display height & width. Please note: fixed pixel values for the dimensions of images or banners are completely irrelevant! The important thing to consider is the subject of the element and where the focus should lay.

Digital Publishing offers endless possibilities for building custom banners - for more info, visit our wiki here

When customizing a shopping world for different display sizes, it is also important to consider adjusting the layout of the elements. Here you have the option to create an entirely different grid (filled with either the same or completely new content), however in most cases you can simply rearrange the elements to accommodate the new viewport. To detail this: in our example with 4 elements, you can very easily adjust the shopping world for mobile viewports by redistributing the elements across 2 full screen sections. When combined with assigning the target for the image display, the redesigned shopping world looks like this:



Keep these points in mind when drafting the blue print for your shopping world. When designing shopping worlds for multiple devices (as is always recommended), proper planning leads to a much smoother implementation workflow.

#### Now a few tips:

- Most prefer to start with a concept for larger devices (desktop / tablet landscape) then scale down.
   However, you start with a concept for smaller devices, it is easier to par down to the essentials and build a crisp, concise story.
- It often makes sense to use less content for mobile devices. This decreases the load time and makes for better usability from the customer's perspective.
- In most cases, shopping worlds for desktops also work for tablet landscape portraits.
- Mobile landscape displays are often smartphones that are horizontally rotated, therefore they have a low height. The same applies for portrait mode on tablets.
- We recommend working with a simple grid (so no more than 2-3 rows and 3-4 columns), especially for users with beginners design experience. This makes it easier to adhere to a consistent design throughout the story.
- Less is more! Instead of using one element per cell, stretch less elements across several cells. It often suits the design to create a full screen section by stretching one element across every available cell.

#### To dos:

- What should the different sections contain?
- What should the grid look like on which you build your story?
- Where should specific elements be placed?
- How should the individual elements behave?
- How should your shopping world be displayed on different devices?

## The implementation

After laying out the groundwork for your shopping world, you can implement your design using the Shopping Worlds module in your Shopware backend.

First click on "Add shopping world", assign a name (i.e. the assigned category), select "Type: Storytelling", specify the number of rows for every full screen section and select the number of columns for the grid. Select which viewports will display this shopping world in the "Select device" area of the window. Finally, assign a category—this is where the new shopping world will appear in the frontend when "Active" is checked. As a tip, we always recommend activating Quickview, as this displays the details of a product in a modal box and creates for a smoother journey through the story. All other settings, unless relevant, can be left empty in this step.

Basic settings		
Names	TestStory	۲
Position:	T Active	÷ 0
Display setting	5	
Deutectomandw	erk & Tradition (A)	-
Product listing: Quick-View:	Show products a	ifter content en a quick view.
	<u> </u>	
Device sett		
Device sett	g world on following device	s
Device sett Display shapping	g world an fallowing device 1260px)	s:
Device sett Display shopping Desktop (> 1 Tablet Lands	g world on following device	8
Device sett Display shopping Desktop (> 1 Tablet Lands	g world on following device 1250px) scape (1024px - 1260px)	s.
Device sett Display shopping     Desktop (> 1     Tablet Lands     Tablet Portra	g world an fallowing device 1260px) scape (1024px - 1260px) nt (768px - 1923px) acape (480px - 767px)	5.

After saving your settings, you will be redirected back to the overview. Select the edit icon of your new shopping world in order to begin working with the designer:

iter		verview Template management	
Categories Deutsch Englisch	Designer - TestSto Settings Layou		1
	Layout sett	ngs	
	Mode:	Storytelling	•
/	Template:	Standard	*
		Fulscreen	
	Storytelling	settings	
	Rows per sect	on: 4	÷ 0
-	Grid setting	5	
	Columns:	3	*
/	Cell spacing:	0	÷
No filter	Row height:		

When working with the designer for a new shopping world, only the first section of your new grid is displayed. Select an element from the library and assign it to a cell using drag & drop. After placing an element, you can change the size so that it covers any number of available cells. Click on the edit icon to being adding content to the element.

To add a new section to your story, select the "Create new section" button. In the frontend, these separate sections will appear as buttons, which can be navigated per click or scroll. Caution: when selecting "Remove above section", all elements contained within will also be deleted!

		HARRISON BUT IN THE MEN	Terminal O T and Sectors O T and Sectors O T	an seeks at an
a second	1m	adat (monet		-
ia ai	1		10 cm	
. marine	A		©*	
	[	_		
	R			
-	40			
anna means	-			
-	E marriera			
10. 100-000-00				

If you want to delete a section but save select elements that have already been completely configured, simply create a new section, drag in the corresponding elements and delete the undesired section.

When creating a new shopping world, it is absolutely vital that you repeatedly test how it behaves in the frontend of various devices (i.e. several mobile displays), since one cannot know the screen size / aspect ratio of the end users device. Although few people have access to an open device lab, you can still simulate these various viewports by scaling your browser or use developer tools (available in Chrome).

Once you have tested your shopping world and are satisfied with the results, you can duplicate the shopping world so that it can be quickly configured for a different device. When copying a shopping world, all content and settings are also copied. To make a duplication, simply select the copy icon and assign the copy to a device.

an I	Franklin Street Street								_	
	O int stangeret O Creek and int	the second second					1. 1.			
C Bar Instein	of them	1000	Langer		desires .	surveiller.	ante fai			
	() thereing an its is categories									
								0/0	0	1
					-			0/-	0	/
								0/0	0.1	
	ACMINE 1	(hearing south)	Residue & California	Decision .	Q.	20140317 10:00		0/-	0.	
									0 410 0 410 11 410	

After creating a copy, select the edit icon and configure the shopping world for the display of the assigned device. Under the "Settings" tab, you can assign additional devices as well as change the grid, if desired.

#### To dos:

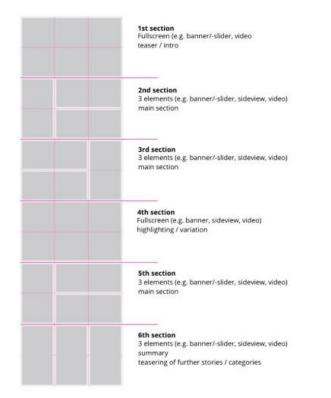
- Create a shopping world as "Type: Storytelling"
- Define the grid, assign a category and assign viewports where this shopping world will appear
- Create sections and fill them with content
- If necessary, duplicate and adjust the shopping world for different viewports

### Conclusion

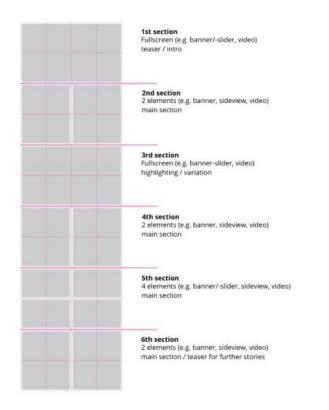
Storytelling offers a multitude of advantages—it allows you to satisfy the visual appetite of customers browsing from diverse devices, differentiates your shop not only from the competition but also eBay and Amazon, strengthens your brand identity and charges your products with value, especially when presented alongside content regarding its use/application.

In closing, we have put together some suggestions how a simple grid can be used to create a diverse collection of well-designed shopping worlds.

## Appendix 1



## **Appendix 2**



hier

## **Quickview in the frontend**

Since Shopware 5.3 it is possible to use the product **quickview** in product listings and sliders. Before, this was only possible in shopping worlds.

### Settings in backend

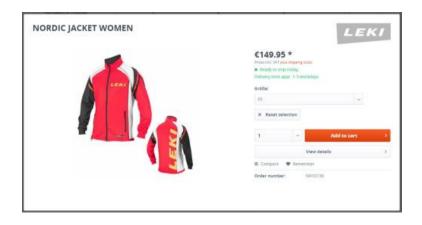
Cerofied Developed b	y: shopware AG	ing		
		Netson: -	2.(0)	
	2 10	Bairg	• • • • • 121	
156ppckmp		0	Reinstall	
20		C	Uninstall	
- States		-	Deactivate	
M 🖬 😒	( ) ( )			
onfiguration Description	n Changelog Com	ments		
onfiguration Description	n Change log Crim	nents		
	Latego and Table	nents		- 0
Construe Cogina		nents		- 0
Genetry Capaz	Lafregs and Tobed	ments		- 0

To enable this feature, open the plugin settings for the Storytelling plugin from the Plugin Manager. There are three configurable options for the quickview:

- No: Quickview in listings and sliders
- Quick view in all listings and sliders: also when clicking on product name or image
- **Only when clicking the details button:** Predominantly useful for products with variants in conjunction with the buy from listing feature described above.

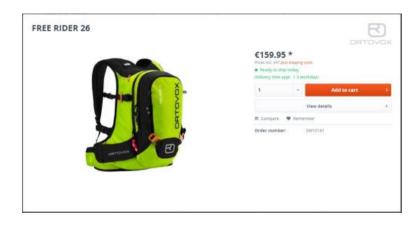
### **Display in frontend**

#### **Regular Product**



A quickview of a regular product with no variants contains all basic information plus the '**Add to cart** button. Additionally, the user can open the detail page by clicking on a deticated **Details** button.

### Variant Product



The quickview for a product with a variant additionally contains the variant configurator, which allows the customer to select and buy a variant right from within the quick view.

# **Plugin: Advanced Menu**

## General

The Advanced Menu allows you to display the category tree of your shop up to a defined depth directly in the navigation via mouse over. You can also show content such as category descriptions and teaser images.

## Installation

The plugin Advanced Menu is already available in the default installation of Shopware and can be installed (1) directly in the Plugin Manager at **Configuration > Basic Settings > Plugin Manager**.

Show menu:	1 Ves	
Category levels:	2 3	
Enable caching:	3 Yes	
Caching time:	4 46400	
Rover delay (ms):	3 250	3
Teaser width:	6 50%	

- Activate expandable menu in stroefront (1): Should the menu be expandable or not?
- Number of tiers (2): Number of tiers to be shown when menu expands
- Activate caching (3): Activates caching for the advanced menu
- Caching time (4): Caching tim in seconds only relevant when frontend-cache ist active

- Hover delay (5) From Shopware 5.2.0: Defines the delay, which will be used at hovering the category.
- **Teaser width (6)**: Defines the width of the teaser, the category image. By default, 50% is used.

If you don't see the option "Hover delay", you should reinstall the plugin once.

### **Display image and description**

### Show category image

By using the Advanced Menu you can display a teaser image of your category. For this you enter the image you want to show in the settings of the category in your backend at **Items > Categories** for the top category in the navigation.

### Show category description

Below the image you can also display the header and category description.

## **Advanced Menu in the Storefront**

With this settings you get a extended menu in the frontend when you hover over the category name in the navigation, which will show the subcategories on the one side and the category image and description on the other side.

# **Plugin: Google Analytics**

## **Google Analytics ID**

This plugin allows the integration of Google Analytics and conversion tracking. To use this plugin, you can register here, if you don't have an Analytics account: <a href="https://github.com/shopware5/SwagGoogle">https://github.com/shopware5/SwagGoogle</a>

After registering, you will receive a Google Analytics ID and Google Conversion Label, which you can then enter into the plugin settings.

It is only required to define the tracking code in Shopware. The structure should appear as follows: **UA-12345678-1** 

You are also able to define for which shops the customer is able to use this function. Simply select the function in the plugin settings of the desired shop.

Danic softman - Googie So			85	20
( 0, 10.00)	Description			
ning Dag sellings Alling Terrer Rilling Research Alling Procession	hangir kostera tr	na the tries. Youge regards" also rate is the scheduly of Scope Addint, graph amond shells at set is the coverant heavy in you may		
Grant Interfaces	Gorgie Cervenatel ID-			
in the part of the second seco	Energies Converses Adults Energies and Palations Nature (Section Section Secti	Internet Fordels : Second Second Sec		•
		Poil	1	

Make sure that the "Google" plugin is installed and activated in the Plugin Manager so that the necessary changes to the tracking can be integrated into the page source text.

## **Google Conversion ID**

You receive this ID when you use the Conversion Tracking feature with Google Adwords. By defining this Conversion ID in the Google plugin, the tracking script for conversions is activated automatically on the thank you page.

You can find more information about creating conversions here.

## Plugin template files (optional)

If you wish to examine or edit the code, you can find relevant plugin template files at: /templates/\_default/frontend/plugins/google/

- adwords.tpl (script activated by Conversion ID)
- analytics.tpl (script activated by Analytics ID)
- **index.tpl** (control files for activating adwords.tpl and analytics.tpl)
- optout.tpl (script activate optional settings for opt-out cookie: Disable google tracking)

# **Plugin: smart search**

Help potential buyers to find your products better and increase your sales effectively. The Intelligent Search can be used with its own algorithm depending on the language and can be optimised specifically for each sub- and language shop. The search is error-tolerant and delivers the right results, even if the search term was entered with spelling mistakes and other word combinations. In addition, similar or related search queries and results are automatically listed. Partial terms are also evaluated and an automatic weighting of the search results takes place, which can then be further filtered by manufacturer, price, category etc.

### **Features**

- Search by product name, keywords, manufacturer, category name
- Automatic weighting of the search results
- Finding of partial terms possible
- Intelligent, error-tolerant search
- Suggestion of similar search terms (keywords)
- Proposal of related search results (+ number of results)
- High performance through indexing of data and caching of search results
- In-house development, no additional costs due to connection of third-party modules
- In the Storefront there is a suggestion function (suggestion search)
- Creation of synonym groups or actions (shopping worlds for the search)
- 5 different algorithms can be used partially combined
- Creation of profiles, between which you can change as required
- Choose between AND and OR combination of the search terms
- Evaluations for the search

The Intelligent Search is **not** compatible with Elasticsearch and therefore cannot be used. In this case, you can use the normal search or take a look at the extensive enterprise search, which is available as part of a Shopware enterprise.

## **General Settings**

You can test and purchase the plugin directly from our store, the marketplace for all Shopware extensions. After installing the plugin you will find the configuration area for the smart search under **Configuration > Intelligent Search** in your backend. The default search configuration in the Basic Settings will disappear from the menu after the Intelligent Search installation has been installed.

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

### Profiles

With the use of profiles, the search can be configured for each language and subshop individually. You can create different profiles to store your settings and configurations. This creates ideal conditions for every

language and assortment.

nji	telligent Search	1					ł	900
					Choose shop:	Demosihop		
B	clast actings	Synanym groups / promotions	Rolevance / fields	Tuble configuration	Profiles Pro	VICTV		
Ð	Add item 🧲	Delete all selected				Search		
	Profile name			Standa	rd			
	Standardprofil				1		0/	1
	Shop German				ж		0/	*
	Shop English				*		0/	*
	Subshop English	1			×		0/	1 1

#### **Create a Profile**

In the menu of the intelligent search, a new profile can be created by clicking on the **Add** button. Since all other search settings are saved in a profile, only the name must be entered for a new profile in the first step. After saving the mask, a new profile will be created for your search, which you can now assign to the corresponding shop.

If you want to create new settings for a profile, this must **always** be saved separately so that the changes are not lost when you change the profile. To do this, open the profile in the menu item **Profiles** by clicking on the pencil icon and save the changes again by clicking Save.

### Add a New Table

In the **Table configuration** menu tab, you can list additional database tables that should be included in the Intelligent Search

#### **Adding Tables**

Change first to tab **Table configuration** and add the required table. Place the table to be considered in the field Table (eg s\_categories). Save the settings below.

Default settings 🚺 Syna	nym gnups i promotions 📜 Re	evance / fields Table configuration	Profiles Preview	
and an owner where the second second	a all velected		Q. Search	
and a second	Reference table	Foreign key	Additional condition	
Table s_articles	Reference table	Foreign key	Additional condition	
s_categories s_articles_supplier	Search table dotails		20 <b>2</b>	
s_articles_details			1	
s articles translations	Choose table:	a callegories		000000
s articles attributes				
- Country Country of C	Choose reference table:	<pre>*_articles_categories</pre>		• /
	Choose foreign key:	categorytD		
	Choose toreign key:	canaballin		
	Define additional			
	condition:			
		Gandel	Save	

#### Add the field and relevance

Change to the tab **Relevance / Fields**. To include the database field (eg Attribute 4) in the search, you must add this field. The following entries must be stored here in the details:

Name: attribute4 (The field name is freely selectable) Value: 20 (Desired relevance of the field in the search) Table field: attr4 (attribute field in the database) Table: s\_articles\_attributes

#### **Define additional condition**

In this field you can define your own condition with a where statement.

In the following screenshot you can see that in the table "s\_articles\_supplier" the condition "id = 2" is stored.

So this table configuration refers only to the manufacturer with the ID 2.

In the table "s\_articles\_supplier" you can find out the ID of the manufacturer.

Intelligente Suche									80	36
						Shop with	len: Dem	oshop		
Grundeinstellungen	Бутопутерер	m / Aktionen	Relevanz / Fel	der Tabele	enkonliguration .	Profile	Vorschau			
O Hinzufügen	Markieris Enträge	Ibschen					Q Suche			
Tabelle	R	eferenztabelle		Fremdschlüss	el .	Zunätzi	iche Bedingu	ng		
s_articles									000000	1
s_categories	٩.,	articles_categor	ries	categoryID					0	1
s_articles_supplier				suppliertD		id = 2			0	1
s_articles_details		articles_detaile		id					0	1
s_articles_translatio	one								0	1
s_articles_attribute									•	/
									•	/

				Choos	e shop: Demo	ranop		1
t	claut actings 🔰 Synonym	r groups / promotions	elevatice / fields	Table configuration Profile	n Preview			
C	Add tem 🙁 Delete all	selected			( <b>Q</b> , 5e)	rçh		
1	Name	Relevance	Table	Field	Do not ap	at .		
1	Kategorie-Keywords	10	s_categories	metakeywords		*	•	
i,	Kategorie-Überschrift	70	s_categories	description		*	•	1
ĺ	Artikel-Name	Relevance details			8.3			1
l	Artikel-Keywords					*		1
ľ	Artikel-Bestellnummer	Relevance name:	athribute4			×	•	/
1	Hersteller-Name	Helevanice name.	Banbule4			*	0	1
1,	Artikel-Name Übersetzung	Relevance value:	20		+		•	/
4	Artikel-Keywords Übers.	Choose table:	s_articles_at	inbules	*	(景)	•	1
		Choose table field:	attr4		+			
		Do not split:			0			
				Cancel	Save			
	4 Page 1 of 1			Caller	Care			

#### Do not split

Enable this option to save the values of this table field to the search index as specified. Otherwise, characters that are not letters, numbers or underscores will be replaced by a space.

Example: Search keywords for item order number 1234-5678-90: active: "1234-5678-90" inactive: "1234", "5678", "90

The search index must be rebuilt after a change!

#### **Clear Cache**

In order for the product properties to be included immediately in the search in the frontend, you must clear the query and search cache after creating the table and fields.

#### **Rebuild the Search Index**

When you rebuild the search index, the stored fields are searched and the terms contained in it, according to the stored algorithms, entered into the cache to speed up the search. In your backend, go to the menu item **Configuration > Caches / Performance > Settings > Search** and rebuild the index. Afterwards also terms from the just deposited tables can be found quickly.

#### Synonym groups and actions

Synonym groups and actions are shopping worlds that are found when you enter specific search terms. This allows you to pick up customers looking for a specific term directly and, for example, integrate marketing objects. So you could include coupon codes in the search that invite a customer to a quick bargain when entering a particular search term.

#### Add a Group

To create a new synonym group or an action, go to the menu item **Synonym Groups / Actions**. Here you can create a new group by clicking on **Add**.

#### **Configure Groups**

General Settings:

Here you can specify the **Group name** where you can call the group in your backend. In the **shop** you determine which shop should be able to call this synonym group. After that determine whether the group should already be **activated** or not.

nonym group deta	ls	86
General settings		
Group name:	Shoel	]
Shop:	Demoshop	•
Active:	V	

Settings for the search page

Here you determine the design of the synonym group. In the **Shopping World for the search page** section, you can enter a shopping world that will be displayed when this group is opened via the search. This option is not mandatory, eg you can work with banners only as well. In the **banner for the search page** banner can be set, which may be displayed in the shopping world and the search results. For this, you can define a **Link for the banner to a specific page** that links internally (in your own shop) or externally to another page. In case of an internal link, you have to work with the SEO-URL, starting with the shop URL. If you want to link eg http://www.myshop.de/beach-relax/, **beach-relax/** or **/beach-relax/** must be entered here depending on the configuration. If you have an external link, you can simply enter the full URL. The **Headline for the banner**, when filled, will be displayed even if you have not deposited a banner, the same applies to the **Description for the banner**.

Shopping World for the search page:																
Banner for the search sage:	-	Select	riedia													
		Reset	media		autry. ne pictur											
link for the banner to a specific page:		_	_	(	_				_	_	_	_	_	_	_	
Headline for the banner:	2.0	в	t U	Font Size		.A.	+	1≣ 1≣	Æ	#	3	Ø. 1	1 6	0	2	
	Path: p															
	Path p	в.	r U	Font Size	•	A	•	12 12	E		3	0 1		0	~	
Oescription for the		в.	r <u>u</u>	Fort Size	•	A	•	12 12	E	×	3	<i>p</i> ]	1 60	0	~	

#### Settings for the Ajax Search

	delicious
2CD	delicacies
ł	
1	
8	
5	Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Aenean commodo lígula
a.	eget dolor. Aenean massa. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient
	montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Donec quam felis, ultricies nec, pellentesque eu,
<b>7</b>	pretium quis, sem. Nulla consequat massa quis enim.Donec pede justo, fringilla vel, 🙎
	aliquet nec, vulputate eget, arcu. In enim justo, rhoncus ut, imperdiet a, venenatis
	vitae, justo. Nullam dictum felis eu pede mollis pretium. Integer tincidunt. Cras

Here you define the look of the page in the proposal search. As described in the settings for the search page you can define here a banner, possibly with a link and heading and description that should be displayed to the customer as a suggestion for the entered search term, to possibly point it to the correct search page.

Bariner for the ajax warch:		Select media Recei media		arpittes						
Link for the banner to a specific page:					<u>.</u>					
Readline for the banner:	36	n / U	Font Size	· 4	<b>-</b> + ⊟	 а	o d	0	· *	
	Path p									
Description for the		в z Ц	Fort Size	+ 1		 а	0 12	<b>6</b> 0	2	
Description for the		n / U	Fort Size	•	⊾ -) II I	 3	0 12 1	<u>s</u> 0	2	

#### Synonyms

Here you determine, under which terms the just created page should be found. Here you can define further terms by clicking on **Add**.

🔾 Add dem 🛛 🤤 Delete all selected	Q faint.
Synsnym Stoss Bestateler Shoes	
Stors	e/
Bestuteller Shoes	0/

#### Use a Group in the Frontend

You can now call up the page just created in your frontend by entering one of the terms just defined in the search.

### **Default Settings**

etault settings	Synonym groups / promotions	Relevano	e / Sekts	Table configuration	Profiles Preview		
Search algori							_
Keyword-Search	E Soundex	-	0	Exact matches:	Levenshtein	•	0
Further settin	gs						
Maximum distan (%):	ce allowed for string matching	20	•	Maximum distance allow (%):	red for partial names	25	\$
Factor for accura	ste hits:	40.0	-	Factor for partial hits:		200	÷
Factor for short	partial hits:	5	*	Number of max, similar frontend and used keyw	results shown in the ords for the search:	8	÷
Minimum relevar	nce for top items (%):	20	÷				
Additional rel	evance						
Relevance for to	p seller products:	1000	*	Relevance for new prod	acta:	500	\$

#### The right Algorithm

You have the choice between three stored algorithms, which can be used for the search in your shop. You can then link the selected algorithm to another one.

Step 1: Select the right main algorithm

There are three algorithms available for this (1):

**Soundex**: Fits best with English. **Kölner Phonetik**: Fits best with German. **Metaphone**: Similar to Soundex, but more precise. Might be slower in certain circumstances.

Step 2: Select the correct postprocessing algorithm

Here are two algorithms to choose from (2), these define the distance between the search term and the terms in your database:

**Levenstein**: Calculates the Levenstein distance between two words which is defined as the minimal number of characters you have to replace, insert or delete. **SimilarText**: Calculates the similarity between two words.

#### Step 3: AND or OR

By default, the search works with an OR logic that ensures that the search results of a query must match only one of the search terms. This results in a larger number of results, but these do not always match the overall search. If you use the AND logic at this point, fewer results will be displayed, but they will be more accurate as a result must match all search terms.

You can find this setting under **Configuration > Basic Settings > Storefront > Search**.

#### Other settings and additional relevance

#### Maximum distance allowed for string matching (%):

Smart search terms have a factor of 0-100, this depends on the deviation from the actual search term and is generated automatically. This setting specifies how far the search term may differ from the term to be found.

#### Factor for accurate hits:

This value is used to calculate the relevance. If a term is found that is evaluated as an exact match by the algorithm, the value of the relevance is multiplied by this factor according to the definition of the relevance/field setting.

#### Example:

Factor for accurate hits: 400 he search term "salmon" finds the product: "Fresh salmon" with the relevance: salmon (400 \* 400) = 160.000

Here, an exact match for the term salmon is found in the product name. This multiplies the value of the product name (400) by the **Factor for accurate hits** (400). Thus, the product "Fresh salmon" gets a total relevance of 160.000

#### Factor for short partial hits:

This value is used to calculate the relevance. If a term is found that is evaluated by the algorithm as a short partial hit, the value of the relevance is multiplied by this factor based on the definition of the relevance/field setting.

**Example:** Part hit factor: 5 The search term "Lac" finds the product: "3L MI Jacket LA GRAVE" with the relevance of la (5 \* 400) = 2.000

Hereby a short hit is found in the product name. This multiplies the value of the product name (400) by the **Factor for short partial hits**. Thus, the product "3L MI Jacket LA GRAVE" gets a total relevance of 2.000

#### Minimum relevance for top item (%):

This value determines the relevance of the products that are still to be considered by the search and which are not anymore. This is percentage related to the product with the highest relevance of the search.

**Example**: Search term: "Salmon" Value: 50 Top item "Fresh salmon" has a relevance of 170000 (Top hit + Topseller) The following item "Fresh Salmon Fillet" have a relevance of 90,000 (Short Partial Hit + Topseller) and are still displayed. The item "salmon filet" has a relevance of 80000 (fraction hits without top sellers) will no longer be displayed, since 80000 is less than 50% of 170000.

#### Maximum distance allowed for partial names (%):

This value defines how many percent of the entered search term must be contained in the search term found so that it is used for the search.

#### Example:

Maximum distance allowed for partial names (%): 30 Entered search term: salmon (5 letters) Selected search term: Smoked Salmon (12 letters) Thus, the term is 41.66% included and is considered for the search.

Search term: smoked salmon fillet (17 letters) Thus, the term is included to 29.41% and is not considered for the search.

#### Factor for Partial Hits:

This value is used to calculate the relevance. If a term is found that is evaluated as a partial hit by the algorithm, then the value of the relevance is multiplied by this factor based on the definition of the relevance/field setting.

**Example:** Part hit factor: 200 The search term "Salmon" finds the product: "Fresh salmonfillet" with the relevance: salmonfillet (200 \* 400) = 80000

Here, a partial hit for the term salmon is found in the item name. This multiplies the value of the product name (400) by the factor for fractional hits (200). Thus, the product "Fresh salmon fillet" gets a total relevance of 80000

#### Number of max. similar results are shown in the frontend and used keywords for the search:

This determines how many different keywords will be used for the search.

**Example:** Value on: 8 Search term: Salmon It is additionally searched for: smoked salmon, salmon fillet, la, leek, lady, lava

Value on: 2 Search term: Salmon It is also searched for: smoked salmon, salmon fillet

#### **Relevance to top seller Products:**

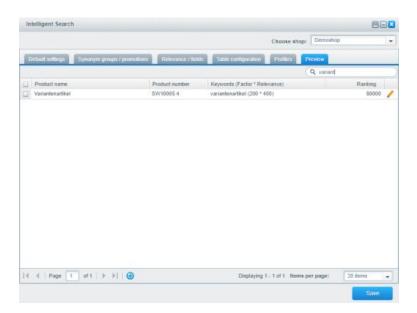
In the case of a top seller product, the added relevance of the value entered here is added to the total relevance.

#### **Relevance for new Products:**

If a new product is found, then the added relevance of the value entered here is added to the overall relevance.

#### **Preview**

In the tab Preview you can enter search terms in the search bar and check if you get the desired results. This function can also be used to check the factors and relevance entered in the tab **Basic settings** against the results displayed. Debugging with the preview is explained in more detail in our article on debugging the search.



## Analyses

			and the second s	and the second sec	004
	R rep	release from the in 199	THE R. LEWIS	Game Direct	
a last the second	-Inexest area:	A REAL REPORTED IN CONTRACT ON	Research Strengt	lipe searcher	No.
The solution is added	Laborard	342446.2111.08.00	10.0	1.1	Denteling
Tatom by july me	(halowed)	303HB-01337HC			broke
Tampon by pattern	Mail .	2020-09-21 13 #1:33			Denation
Trained By Collinson (print)	free.	2020-de-21-11 milli			Density
With surplus ballout					
Section (contract)					
Party and a state of the state					
Cashronia age					
further by some					
Partners in concession insulate					
Torono in torono in					
formaria to tabé al test					
farmers in composing					
Lemma by unations					
Training to partner!					
Taxante by ringsing technols					
Extransi da restalaciones:					
formers in the desired law					
Papage stands incom					
- Argun					
Care and classic incoment					
And the owner of the owner.					
1.11					
	10.0.1 Tax 11.011.0				Thereine 7 - 1-7

In the area **Marketing > Analysis > Analysis** you will find a new point where the entered search terms without result including the searches within a defined period and the searches as a whole are saved. This way you can see how many times a certain term was searched for in total and additionally the number of searches within the defined period. If you filter for certain periods of time in which certain search terms were not searched at all (i.e. searched in period = 0), they will not be listed at all.

# **Plugin: smart newsletter**

Some hosters have a specific limit per day for e-mail delivery, so you should consult with your hosting partner beforehand if this limit is sufficient for your needs.

In this article we will explain the features of the premium plugin Smart Newsletter.

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

### **Overview**

	1 HE 2 HE	0	0	6	6	0	8	9	0 9		-
ale	Shipping d		Status		Leffers rea		Tumover	Released	Delivery time	Actions	-
0.01/2	Not fini	Newsletter Text 3	Not sent	3	0	0	0	×	and a second diverse of the second		NO O
01/2	20/01/2	Newsletter Test 2 Newsletter Test	All mails have been		0		386.51	1	20/01/20217:00	19	00
101/2	20/01/2	Newsletter lest	All mails have been	3	2	3	436.65	1	19/01/2021 3:10	6	0

After you open the newsletter manager, you will see the newsletter overview. This table includes the main information of all newsletters, which are present in the shop and provides a couple of actions you can trigger directly from the table.

- **Date (1):** The date on which the newsletter was initially created.
- Shipping date (2): The date, when the newsletter sending was finished.
- **Subject (3):** The subject of the newsletter, which was set during the creation of the newsletter.
- **Status (4):** Shipping status of the newsletter. If the newsletter is ready for shipment, the percentage of already sent mails will be displayed here.
- **Recipients (5):** Amount of recipients for this newsletter.
- Letters read (6): Amount of newsletters, which were actually read by it's recipient.
- **Clicks (7):** Amount of clicks the newsletter generated; How often recipients clicked the newsletter to access the shop.
- **Turnover (8):** Total turnover generated by recipients, who clicked the newsletter.
- **Released (9):** Shows, if the newsletter is marked as "Ready for sending", important for sending the newsletter via cronjob.
- **Delivery time (10): Immediately**, if the newsletter is already ready for sending or **Date**, when sending is planned for the future.
- Edit newsletter (11): Opens the selected newsletter in the editor.
- **Delete newsletter (12):** Deletes the selected newsletter.
- Send newsletter (13): Immediately sends the newsletter, only available if no planned date is set and the newsletter is not marked as "ready for sending".
- **Duplicate newsletter (14):** Duplicates the selected newsletter.

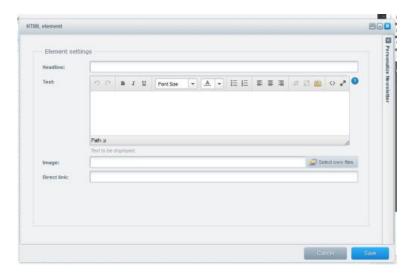
### Designer

Create newsletter		860	Default cienects:	
Newslefer edite			Producti group	
Mail address:	and Instanti @ Preverse		HTML element	
angene 🕦			Barner	
			Lask.	
			Visicher	
			Suggest	
			Third party elements:	
		0		
		Contraction of the second		
			-	
	100	Dark to provide Dark		

In contrast to the Standard Newsletter, the Intelligent Newsletter has a **designer (3)**. The **elements (1)** can simply be dragged into the designer or onto the **work platform (2)** and placed .

## **Available Elements**

### **HTML element**



With the HTML element you are able to add content to your newsletter. The extendable sidebar on the right of the window shows all available variables, e.g. to personalize the newsletter.

The following variables are available:

- \$sUser.email: E-mail address of the recipient
- \$sUser.salutation: Salutation of the recipient
- **\$sUser.firstname:** Firstname of the recipient
- **\$sUser.lastname:** Lastname of the recipient

- \$sUser.street: Street and No. of the recipient
- **\$sUser.zipcode:** Zipcode of the recipient
- **\$sUser.city:** City of the recipient

Examples of use:

Variable/Example	Explanation
<pre>{if \$sUser.salutation == 'mr'}Mister{/if}{if \$sUser.salutation == 'ms'}Miss{/if}</pre>	Use of the correct salutation
{if \$sUser.city !=""}How is it going in {\$sUser.city}?{/if}	Use of the city in a sentence. The sentence will only be shown, if there is a value available for the city.
You are registered to out newsletter with th e- mail address {\$sUser.newsletter}.	Note for the registrated e-mail address, which receives the newsletter

### Banner

-		
Element settir		
Headline:	1	
Image:		Select own files
Link:		
Select target:	Please choose	

### **Product group**

duct group			8
Element settings			
Headline:			
The	e field can be left blietie if no headline is	dealed.	
Product administrat	tion		
Addiprod	auct -		
= Article type	Order number	Product name	
- Frinze type	and an and a second		
-			
			Cancill Sav

You can select from four different item types:

- Random: Shows a random item.
- **Top selling product:** Shows one of the topseller items.
- **New product:** Shows a new item (This depends on the setting, how long new items are highlighted as new).
- **Chosen product:** Shows the item you select.

### Link

Add link:	0		2 Add inx
= Link	Description	Link target	Action

Using this element, you can use one or more links in the newsletter and set a description (1) and a link target (2) per link.

### Voucher

Headline: Select voucher:	Phone chi										-
Text:		виш	Font Size	 • E	E IE	E I	3 0	1	۵)	0 e <sup>8</sup>	0
	Coupon	Code: (SsVou	ther.code}								
	Path: p Test A: Ise d									b	
Image: 2								1	Sele	ect own fil	es
Direct link:											

You can add individual vouchers, which are added to the newsletter automatically. You should make sure, that your voucher has enough free codes. You can also modify the text (1) for the voucher element, add an image (2) or a link (3).

Only one voucher box can be placed in the newsletter at a time; it is not possible to send several individual vouchers to one customer.

### Suggest

Suggest	898
Element settings Headline: Number of proposed products:	
	Cancel

The suggest shows individual items depending on the recipient, based on their search and order history in your shop. Note that this feature only works for registered customers, not registered customers will see random items. You can define, how many products are suggested **(1)**.

In addition you can also create your own elements for extending the newsletter.

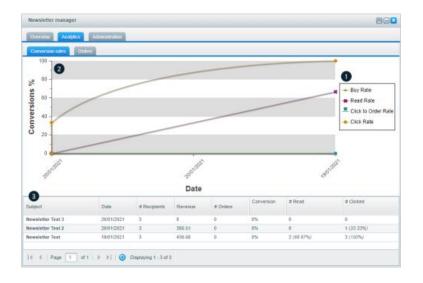
## Settings

Create newsletter					896	
Newsletter editor	Settings					
Newsletter setti	ngs					
Subject:						
2 Sender:	Newslette					
Customer group:	Shophunden					
Select language:	Demostop 55					
Send at:	[	(E)	()			
Shipping type:	HTML + p	aintext.				
Published:						
ready for sending:					0	
Customer groups: Own recipient grou		Shopkunden () receiver)  Newsletter Empflinger () receiver)	Händler (0			
Customer Streams					- 0	
				Back to ovirview	Save	

- Subject (1): Subject of the newsletter.
- Sender (2): The e-mail-address that is used as the sender of the newsletter.
- **Customer group (3):** Customer group the newsletter is associated with.
- Select language (4): Select the Language of the newsletter.
- Send at (5): Planned date, when the newsletter will be send.
- **Shipping type (6):** Defines if the newsletter is send as plaintext or HTML and plaintext.
- Published (7): Defines, if the newsletter is listed at "yourshop.com/newsletterlisting".
- **Ready for sending (8):** Marks the newsletter to be available for sending via cronjob
- Select newsletter recipients (9): Used to select, who the newsletter should be send to. You can select from customer groups, custom recipient groups and Customer Streams.

## **Analytics**

In the tab "Analytics" you find a graph and a table showing different analytics regarding the newsletters you've sent.



The **graph (2)** shows the following **values (1)** for the newsletters you've sent, so you can compare, how your different newsletters performed:

- **Buy Rate:** Shows the percentage of orders in comparison to the amount of sent newsletters.
- **Read Rate:** Shows the percentage of newsletters, which were read by the recipients in comparison to the amount of sent newsletters.
- Click to Order Rate: Shows the percentage of orders resulting from clicks.
- **Click Rate:** Shows the percentage of newsletters, which were clicked by the recipients in comparison to the amount of sent newsletters.

Please note that the date always refers to the date on which the newsletter was sent. This is not the date on which orders were placed.

More details can be found in the lower **section (3)**.

- **Subject:** Subject of the respective newsletter.
- **Date:** Date on which the newsletter was sent.
- **Recipients:** Number of newsletter recipients.
- **Revenue:** Revenue generated by purchases from the newsletter. These refer to the net value of the items purchased. Any shipping costs included in the order are not taken into account.
- Orders: Number of orders from the newsletter.
- **Conversion:** Conversation calculated in the ratio of orders placed to newsletters read.
- **Read:** Number of newsletters read. Please note that this tracking is only counted if the customer loads the images in the newsletter. Some mail programs require the user to load the images manually. If this does not happen, the newsletter is not counted as read.
- **Clicked:** Number of links clicked by recipients in the newsletter.

## Administration

The administration tabs contains three tabs, which contain useful settings and information regarding the newsletters in Shopware.

## Sender

Sender Recoverly maps Recoverly		
Create sender 🔅 Delete selected		
_ Malatress	Name of sender	Actions
info@example.com	Newsletter Abgender	0/
tm@shepware.com	Subshop Absender	0/

Here you can create, edit and delete newsletter senders, which can be selected when creating a newsletter. You can set, which e-mail address is shown as the sender and which name will be displayed for this sender.

## **Recipient groups**

			80
Dvervlew Analytica Administration			
Seader Recipient groups Recipients			
O Create newsitetter group 💿 Delete selected			
Group n 🚺 🛛 🕗	Recipients	10	Actions
Own recipient groups (1 Group(s))			
Newsletter-Emplinger	a	1	•
E Customer groups (1 Group(s))			
G Shapkunden	3	1	

In this tab you can **create (1)** and **delete (2)** custom recipient groups for your newsletters. Only custom recipient groups will be shown here, but not the recipient groups based on the customer groups.

## Recipients

Add recipient	Delete selected			Q Search	
Matheas	2 Group	Previous newsietter	Register date	Opt-in confirmed	Actions
	EK (Customer group)	Neursletter Teol 2	19/01/2021 1.40 PM		2
I STREET, STREET, STR	EK (Customer group)	Neursietter Test 2	18/01/2021 3:05 PM		2 2 2
	EK (Customer group)	Neurolatter Taut 2	19/01/2021 3 04 PM		0

This lists every newsletter recipient of your shop. You can **add (1)** and **delete (2)** recipients or search for specific recipients. You can see, when the recipient confirmed the double opt-in and which newsletter is the last one the recipient received. By double clicking a recipient you can modify the e-mail address and recipient group. If you change the recipient group, you can only select the custom recipient groups.

# Alternating smtp emailing

You can configure a separate emailing using a differing smtp server by using this change in the cofig.php:

```
'newsletterMail' => array (
    'name' => '',
    'type' => 'smtp',
    'auth' => 'login',
    'username' => '',
    'password' => '',
    'host' => '',
    'port' => '',
    'ssl' => ''),
```

Here a complete example:

```
<?php
return array(
    'db' => array(
    'username' => 'root',
    'password' => 'root',
    'dbname' => 'shopware',
    'host' => 'localhost',
    'port' => ''
),
    'newsletterMail' => array (
        'name' => '',
        'type' => 'smtp',
        'auth' => 'login',
        'username' => '',
        'port' => '',
        'ssl' => ''
),
```

Please mind that you must not do empty elements in this because those will not automatically be changed to "NULL". You must either fill all elements or just leave out the option that does not get a value.

This setting only changes the emailing of the intelligent newsletter. All other components of the shops ware using the basic mailer settings.

## Time managed newsletter sending

The plugin allows you a time manages sending of your newsletter.

eate newsletter						86
ewslettes editor	Settings					
Newsletter setti	ings					
Subject:						
Sender:	Newslette	r Absender				
Customer group:	Shopkund	len				
Select language:	Demosto	p 56				
Send at:	26/01/21		11:30 AM	C 🛛 🕄		
Shipping type:	HTML + p	tainled				
Poblished:						
ready for sending:	2					0
Own recipient grou		Revolution Emp	fänger (0 receiver)			
Customer Streams						- 0
					Back to symplety	Save

In the newsletter settings you find an option **Send at (1)**. There you can easily define a time when you want to send the newsletter. For this you also have to activate **ready for sending (2)** for the newsletter to be send when calling myshop.de/backend/Newsletter/cron.

The newsletter will only be send when the defined date and time have been reached. If the date or time is in the future this newsletter will not be used by the cronjob.

# Plugin: Hide prices if not logged in

With the plugin **Hide Prices without Login** you have the possibility to hide all prices in the shop. Optionally they can be restricted to customer groups.

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

# Configuration

Show Prices:		Yes		1	•
Show Prices only for cust	lomer groups:				6

## **Show Prices**

In the field **Show Prices** you can define when the prices should be displayed.

- **Yes:** If you select this option, the prices will always be displayed.
- No: If you choose this option, the prices will always be hidden (regardless of customer groups).
- Only for customer groups defined in the lower field: This option displays or hides prices depending on the named customer groups.

## Show Prices only for customer groups

At **Show Prices only for customer groups** you can define for which customer group the prices should be displayed in the frontend. Please enter the customer group abbreviation here.

# **Plugin: customer-specific prices**

Using this plugin you are now able to offer special discounts on certain items and for certain customers. This is completely independent and separate from customer groups and their graduaded prices and offers another way of appreciating your custom.

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

# Configuration

## Add customer groups

In the menu in **Customers > Customer specific prices** you will find an overview of the already defined groups.

To create a new group, just click **add** and enter the respective data. When a group is created, you can assign customers to this group via the tab **Customers**.

## **Assign customers**

User p	N.M.S										
Grup	Costantes	(Vana)									
Select g	roup:	erénotaço d		-							
			Q =	ent.					Q =		
lunder 20006	Customer group Dit	Company	Profisane (0	Last same kunde	2	Number	Customer proop	Congery	First cache	Last name	

Just select your group and drag & drop the desired customers onto the grid on the right hand side.

A customer can only be associated to one group, customers who are already assigned to a group are ignored in the customer search.

After adding any number of customers to the group, you should get on with defining individual prices in the tab **Prices**.

#### **Define customer-specific prices**

	and for the second							
Select group:	Exployees		-					
Only show main	producte:	Q familia		From	Ti:	Price	Percentage	
Ordernamber	Mane	Default price	Current price	3	Arbitrary		D%	
DW10001	VENDM WARD 5	120.01	0.00					
5W10002	TITAMUM CARBON OS	128.01	0.00					
5W10002.1	TITANUM CARBON GS	126.01	0.00					
5W10002.2	TITANUM CARBON OS	120.01	0.00					
SW10002.3	TITAMUM CARBON 95	120.01	0.00					
5W10003	CARBON D	126.01	0.00					
5W10003.1	CARBOND	126.01	9.00					
5W10003.2	CARBON D	128.01	0.00					
EW10003.3	CARBOND	120.01	0.00					
BW10004	YENDM SL	117.61	0.00					
SW10004.1	VENDM SE	117.61	0.05					
5W10004.2	VENOM SL	117.61	0.00					
5W10004.3	VENDM SL	117.61	0.00					
5W10004.4	VEHOM BL	117.61	0.00					
SW10004.5	VENDIA SL	117.61	0.00					

The customer-specific prices are defined via the **Prices** tab by entering the prices for any article in your shop. To edit the article, click on it and enter the prices and quantity/discount scales on the right-hand side. As soon as you define a price for a scale, the percentage discount is calculated automatically.

You can define a quantity discount as soon as you have created at least a second scale. A discount for a single scale (e.g. 1 to any) is not possible.

# **Plugin: Live Shopping**

The Live Shopping Plugin allows you to offer items over a defined period of time or a defined amount with a promotional price.

You have 3 options to promote the articles:

- **Standard:** Der Artikel wird über den definierten Zeitraum und/oder Kontingent angeboten.
- Discount per minute: The price will be decreased every minute.
- **Surcharge per minute:** The price will be raised every minute.

# Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

# **Plugin Settings**

The plugin settings offers you various options:

- Show article ranking (1): When setting Show article rating to yes, the article ratings are displayed in the listing as well as in the / live shopping listing.
- Listing headline: (2): You can define an introduction text which appears on top of the Live Shopping Listing (2) in the frontend
- Banner for the Live Shopping listing (3): Select a banner which appears in the Live Shopping Listing
- **Template selection (4)**: The option **Template Selection**, offers you the possibility to change the number of columns displayed in the Live Shopping listing.
- Lsting Meta Title (5): Defines the meta-title in the head-tag
- Listing Meta Description (6): Defines the meta-description in the head-tag
- Listing Meta Keywords (8): Defines the meta-keywords in the head-tag
- Show product description in the category (9): Defines if the product desscription is shown in the listing or not

Show product rating:	0	Yes														
Listing Headline:	0															
Text for the Liveshopping listing:		Tahoma	~	в	ιų	A	Ă	Δ.	•2.	( <b>#</b>	=	4	IE	iΞ	22	
		null														
	0															
Banner for the Liveshopping listing:	0													2	Select.own	1903
Template selection:	0	5				-							 -			,
Listing metatitie:	0															-
Listing metadescription:	0															
Listing metakeywords:	0															
Show product description in the category:	0	- Maria														-

# How to create a Live Shopping Article

Open the article and click the tab **Live Shopping (1)**. Use the **Add Live Shopping (2)** button to create a new Live Shopping action.

To remove Live Shopping actions, simply select the appropriate Live Shopping actions and remove them by using the button **Delete Live Shopping (3)**.

Bas groves groves	and growing grows				
	Configuration	and had been been be			
name Decid Differ andy Soldey!	Activit: Live eticopping name Live eticopping type: Dictor sendari: Valet type:	Social Offer and motors' Tennes (*) LATIZA Instant (*) Valid Anore: (2016 av (*)	Landes Carried stock Andreas participation Statement participation quantity	Construction	÷ •
	Add price:				
	Castomorphus Shoa 82H		End press	Per minutal 34 900009	

After you created a Live Shopping action, the configuration window becomes visible. Until then you are able to define your Live Shopping settings for the selected action.

Following options are available:

- Live Shopping Name (1): Internal name for the action.
- Live Shopping Type (2): Determines whether the item is sold in standard as discount per minute or surcharge per minute.
- Order number (3): Specifies the order number for the action.
- Valid from von (4): Sets the date and time when the action starts. The start date or time must be before the end date or time- Otherwise the date cannot be set.
- Active (5): Activate the action

- Limited (6): Determines whether the number of action items is limited or not. If the number is limited, the exact number of items available for the Live Shopping price appears as a purchase incentive in the frontend.
- Current stock (7): Sets the stock when limiting.
- **Initial stock (8):** Sets the initial stock level. This option as like a pseudo stand. This value is crucial for the scale of the limitation.
- Maximum purchase quantity(9): Sets the maximum number of items that can be sold at once.
- Valid to (10): Sets the time and date at which the action is terminated. The end date or time may not be before the start date or time. Otherwise the date cannot be set.

Actives				Limited.	6 🕢 Live shopping	apocs.
Live abopping name:	2 Secial Offer or	vly today!		Current stock:	12	+
Live shopping type:	3 Standard		-	Initial stock:	8 2	
Order number:	CIVE1234			Maximum purchase quantity:	0	-
Valid from:	5 05/04/17 📺	Valid from:	12.00 Al 🕒		10 ESDA17	Valid to: 12 00 Ph (E

After you have configured your Live Shopping action, click the button **Save Live Shopping** button before setting further options.

 Prices (1): Specifies prices specific to each customer groups. 'Product price' is always the initial price and 'End price' sets the final price or in standard mode the action price. 'Per minute' will show you the price difference per minute.

Prices Custone progr	s Lind vor all b Ships			
Add price:		- 0		
Customergroup	Product price	End price	Per minute	
Customergroup Shop B2B	68.9	34.9	34.900000	0

• **Customer groups (1):** Defines for which customer groups the action is visible.

Add customergroup:	- 0	
Customergroup		
828 Customer		

• Limit variants (1): Determines which article variant price(s) will be reduced

Add variant:	- 0	
Product number	Additional text	
SW12008		-
SW10006 SW10006.1		
5W10006.2		

• Shops: Defines the (sub) shops where the action will be visible.

Pices Customerginum Landva	marts Shops	
Add shop:		
Shop name Demostration		
Dementop		6

After the settings the Live Shopping you have to save the article once more. Other the changes will not be accepted.

## The different modes of the live shopping actions

The plugin offers 3 different modes for live shopping in total.

#### Standard

The discount is offered for a limited time period. The article price will be given out in the frontend as a bar price (instead of :). The final price is the promotional price. In this module you can neglect the column '*per minute*' as this has no meaning here!

Desktop view:

BEANIE "DOCKSIDER"



00	Offer ends in: 0 ± 01 ± 52 min		enty 12 pieces	
	€34.9	0 * instead of west		
<ul> <li>Ready to</li> <li>Delivery mi</li> </ul>	AT plus stapping co s ship today. He appr. 5-3 worl			
Color: Black			6	
1	~	Add to shopp	ing cart	
	e 🗣 Bernerr		ing cart	2

Mobile view:

#### **Demo**Shop





#### Discount per minute

The article will be getting cheaper every minute during the given period. The article price is your starting price, the final price defines the price of the last minute of the promotion and the column "Per minute" shows the amount of the article discount which is getting cheaper each minute.

Desktop view:

BEANIE "DOCKSIDER"



Offer anda in:	enty
00 d 01 h 07 min 17 s	12 pieces
€38.40 *	ed at. 608.90 *
- 60.05 m	17 :
Process mot. WAT plug strapping costs	
<ul> <li>Ready to thip today.</li> </ul>	
Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays	
	-
Color: Black	o shopping cart >
1.2212	o shopping cart >

Mobile view:

#### **Demo**Shop



#### BEANIE "DOCKSIDER"





Prices ind, VAT plus shipping costs

Ready to ship today,
Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays

#### Surcharge per minute

This is the exact opposite to the discount per minute.

Desktop view:

BEANIE "DOCKSIDER"





Mobile view:

**Demo**Shop





 Ready to ship today, Delivery time appr. 1-3 workdays

## Views in the frontend

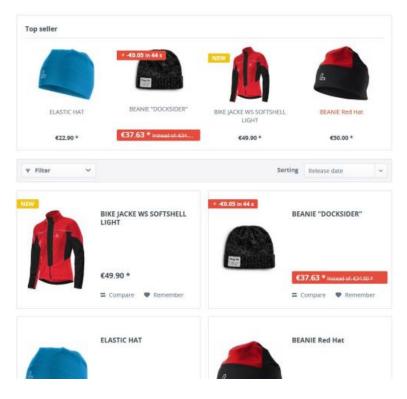
Live Shopping articles are specially marked in the frontend in the listing and on the item detail page.

Articledetails

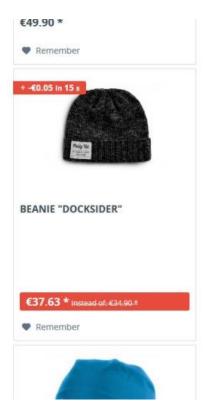
See above.

Listing (Listing view)

Desktop view:



#### Mobile view:



Shopping Worlds:



Get it off!!!!!!	Live Shopping	
Shopware has acquired a stack of excess stock that we need to clear - fast! There's heaps of new deals every day, for one day only, at crazy low prices.	00 d 13 h 16 min 15 s NEU	00 d 13 h 16 min 15 z NEU 16
POPPY DAY SALE. The region's best selection of alpine equipiment, with discounts to all on skis, shoes and SKI wear, and expert advice	LEXINGTON	TYROLIA ADRENALIN 16 LONG
	499,00 € * Statt: 699,00	299,00 € * statt 379,00

## The Live Shopping Listing / Overview

The overview in the frontend gives you a complete listing of all active Live Shopping items. The URL had to be look like this: http://www.ihreDomain.de/livesshopping

5

# **FAQs Live Shopping**

## Why did the Live Shopping discount will not appear in the frontend?

Please check the item number. The item number should correspond to the specifications of Shopware: Create products

## Live Shopping does not appear even though time and date are correctly set

The Live Shopping times dependent on server time. Check the adjusted time of your server and correct it (if necessary via your hosting partner)

Create a php file '*time.php*' with the following content and upload it to your server.

```
<?php
echo date(DATE_RFC822);
?>
```

Afterwards call the php script with http://www.meinedomain.de/zeit.php. The current server time will be displayed.

## **Restrictions of the Live Shopping plugin**

- Live Shopping prices on the item details page will be ignored within the bundles but displayed and calculated in the shopping cart (valid only if the bundle plugin is activated) Live shopping items should not be offered within a bundle
- Variant surcharges will not be considered
- Live shopping prices are not included in the price filter
- The number of items of the Live Shopping article cannot be changed in the shopping cart
- If there are many live-shopping items in your shop, this results in a large number of assignments in the database. You should make sure that the limit in your database is sufficient. If it is not, this can be increased by your hoster.

## How to purchase Live Shopping

You can test and purchase the plugin directly from our Store , the official market place for all Shopware extensions.

# **Plugin: License Manager**

# License Manager

The License Manager is only required if you wish to install plugins that require licenses. These plugins are only accessible with licenses, which you must provide via License Manager.

# Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

# Configuration

After the installation is complete, the License Manager can be called under **Configuration > Basic settings > Additional settings > Licence manager (1)**. You can add or delete licences using the upper **buttons (2)**. Click on the **edit pen (2)** if you want to update an existing licence. After you have selected the licence, detailed information on the **selected licence (4)** is available in the Details screen on the left.

The adjustable settings are as follows:

- **Description:** Here you can see for which plugins the license is valid.
- Module: This is the name of the module.
- Host: This is the domain for which the license has been issued.
- Added on: This is the date on which the license was added to the License Manager.
- **Created on:** This is when the license was created.
- **Expiration date:** This is the date on which the license is no longer valid.
- License version: This indicates which version of the license you have.
- Active: This indicates whether the license is active or not.
- License: The license code must be entered here.

C AACHEN C TANK AND		( R SHARES )	Jane	0	
and the second se	nat ha ƙaran		Intern Jahon Millaho Antoni Mari Control Marine Linearity Linearity	Seguritariane	

# Valid as of Shopware 5.2.0

Since the release of Shopware 5.2.0 premium plugins are to be considered open source. This way and given the fact you don't plan on using 3rd party plugins, you don't need to maintain License Manager or ionCube installations anymore. This is true for subshops as well, diminishing the need for the License Manger greatly. To be clear: License Manager and ionCube are only required for 3rd party plugins, that are still encrypted.

If you still want to install the License Manager, you can do so, and we will show you how - in the following sections.

## How do you properly acquire a plugin?

There are two different ways of acquiring plugins for your shop:

- By using the Plugin Manager
- Via our Shopware Store

#### I have rented an encrypted plugin. What's next?

As usual, it depends. The answer is primarily determined by the way you purchased the plugin. Generally, there are two major ways of acquiring plugins for Shopware.

#### Acquisition through the Plugin Manager

If you rented your plugin using the Plugin Manager, the license will be imported directly and you won't have to do anything else! However if you don't have the License Manager installed, Shopware will prompt you with a warning, asking whether or not you would like to install the License Manager anyways. Be aware, that without it no encrypted plugin will work at all.

#### Acquisition via the Shopware store

If you rented your plugin in our store, there are two ways of installing it:

**Import via "My purchases":** After renting the plugin, it will be connected with your account. So simply open the Plugin Manager, hit up "*My purchases*" and look for the desired plugin. Using the action buttons on the right, you can import your license and download the plugin itself. If the License Manager isn't installed yet, you will be prompted to install it first.

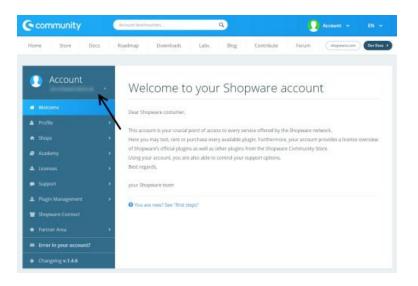
**Import manually:** First, install the License Manager plugin and activate it. Clear the cache (Ctrl + Alt + X), reload the backend and open the License Manager in the backend, to enter your plugin license, not until then can you install encrypted plugins.

# Up to Shopware 5.1.6

Install the License Manager plugin and activate it. Clear the shop cache and reload the backend.

#### Add a new license in Shopware

Log in to your **Shopware-Account**. Licenses always depend on a domain, so select the domain you rented the plugin for.



In the menu, navigate to **Licenses**. Here you find an overview of all the plugins you rented. Search the newly installed plugin (1) and then click on "*Details / Download*" (2).

community	Account durchmenters.	-	9				
lome Store Docs	Roadmap De	ownloads Labs	Bing C	ontribute	Forum	(Imperiate	Des Do
Account	· Licens	es -	Augusta a				
<ul> <li>Welcome</li> <li>Profile</li> </ul>		roducts is not compatib Products was licensed f		Given an active si	ubscription,	the new product	
• Shaps	-	Start wir	ard for license upp	rade to Shopware	5 now!		
Academy				a na manana ang kanana ka			_
	Filter						
	1000 10		Promotion ()			X Reset	
Licenses	Filter Search:	[	Promotion			¥ Reset	2
	Filter	s:	Promation	19		¥ Reset	B
Licenses Licenses Subscriptions	Filter Search: Hidden license Q Was int das?	s:	Promotion	19-		¥ Reset	80
Licenses Licenses Subscriptions Plugin support Enterprise Clent Administra	<ul> <li>Filter</li> <li>Search:</li> <li>Hidden license</li> <li>Was bit das?</li> </ul>	s: (		±se	(	¥ Reset	
Licenses      Licenses      Subscriptions      Plugin support      Enterprise Client Administra      Support	<ul> <li>Filter</li> <li>Search:</li> <li>Hidden license</li> <li>Was bit das?</li> </ul>	s:		1 %	dav	¥ Reset	
Licenses  Licenses  Licenses  Subscriptions  Plugin support Enterprise Client Administra  Support	Filter Search: Hidden license Was int das? Premium 1	s: (		± Sha Suliscription	w	¥ Reset	

A window will pop up, presenting the plugin's details. Click on "*license code*" to request a code.



Now copy this code, switch to your Shopware backend and open the License Manager via **Configuration** > **Basic settings** > **Additional settings** > **License Manager**. Here you will see all licenses ever added to your shop.

Q fairin	O Addentry C Delite with	Q hards	Desim	0
<ul> <li>Shop strings</li> <li>Shop strings</li> <li>Shop strings</li> <li>Termed</li> <li>Premed strings</li> <li>Answert strings</li> <li>Answert strings</li> <li>Shop string</li></ul>	Later Value Feat Type	u		
	14 4 Page 1 172 3 31 3			

Click "Add", check the Active setting and paste your license code into the designated field. Save your entry and check the license for integrity.

When adding a license, you don't need to worry about a license name. The name is automatically picked and set at saving the license.

After adding the license to your system, you are now able to install the plugin using the Plugin Manager (head to "*My purchases*") or install it manually if you see yourself fit to do so

#### **Removing licenses**

Using the License Manager enables you not only to append, but also to delete licenses. In order to do so, just open the License Manager go to **Configuration > Basic configuration > Additional settings > License Manager** and click the "*Remove*" icon next to the license you want to get rid of. After a license is deleted, the plugin will stop working and cannot be installed anymore (unless a new license is issued).

#### Manually installing plugins

Installing a plugin manually is not as complicated as it may sound. Simply search for your license as in the section "Add a new license to Shopware" and click "**Details / Download**".

community	(Account durithmether)	-	9		🚺 Account 👻	
Home Store Docs	Roadmap Dr	ownloads Labs	Bing	Contribute For	tam (Increased	Den Dock
	Licens	es -	stropesers.)			
Welcome     Profile		roducts is not compati inProducts was licensed		2. Given an active subs	cription, the new product	
▲ Shaps		Start e	izard for license up	grade to Shopware 5 r		
Academy     Licenses	Filter					
Ucenses	Search:		Promotion 1		Reset	
Subscriptions Plugin support Enterprise Client Administra	Hidden license Ø Was ist das? Gon			± Show		
<ul> <li>Support</li> </ul>	Premium	Plugin licenses	for	ingeneration in		
Plugin Management     Shopware Connect	Name		Variant:	Subscription:		
<ul> <li>Partner Area</li> </ul>	(SW5) Advanced	d Promotion Suite	Buy version	until 2017-06-28	A Details / Download	0

A popup will appear, enabling you to download a plugin that is compatible with your Shopware version (look for bold text in the section "compatible with"):

Vame: SwagPromotion Description: Advanced Promotion Suite Created: 2016-06-28 Type: Buy License issued for: Shopware 5		ĺ
Subscription: Creation date: Jun 28, 2016 9:14:24 AM Expiration date: Jun 28, 2017 9:14:24 AM	Your subscription is still valid! Renew subscription by 6 months  Renew until 2017-12-28 for € 123.75 plus applicable vat	
Download latest version	± Download (1.2.3)	
You	rsion published on: Sep 6, 2016 1:24:10 PM ur shopware version: 52:10 mpatible with: 52:0, 52:1, <b>52:10</b> , 52:11, 52:12, 52:2, 52:3, 52:4, 52:5, 6, 52:7, 52:8, 52:9	

Check before downloading if your Shopware version is still valid. If not, it is possible you download a plugin version that is incompatible with your Shopware Version, potentially endangering your enterprise and all saved data!

Next open the Plugin Manager, choose "*Installed*" and click "*Upload plugin*". Choose the zip file you previously downloaded and upload it to your Shop. The plugin will appear in the plugin list afterwards and can be initially found in "Uninstalled". If you do, you are now ready to ultimately install the plugin and finally put it in a usable state.

	O totter dear Ø						9,		
	Papine	Venim	Falaber an	i pane pi	Loanas	Adre	Developed by		
Account.	III Installed (6 Physics)								
	Sa Lizerz-Matager	.62.8	29/02/01/8	29/12/09/6		19	1000 at a 3/2	1	Q 97
New Account	Secondary 6 Deep Sala 310	82.8	THEWDOLA	18080236		9	Adapted to Arit		0 17
Wy purchaski:	🔹 Shepware Auto Uptone	10.0	2010/02/14	3894463414		2	4410010-010-010		0 62
and a second second	E LANDERS		10110/2519	10102010		1	Alteres Arb		0 47
	🚯 Endetre		10/10/2018	18130310		100	aloge per 343		0.92
1.110	Elector	- (A.).	10110/0018	18100010			Abumata AG	1	0
	12 Emeradadent (18 Plugina)								
	Deri						101000-000-012	1	0
cost-ter	1 Contraction						attanears AG	1	0
hocommendation	The Executation						1000001-00	1	0
Newscorear	ef teittee						uniquera ad	1	0
Replicent	The second second second						thurses 40.	1	0
Thereas	No. Ballington						discount of the	1	0
lance of e	( market						All an experies	1	0
Constalions	6 tms	144					Abumara AD.	1	0
Genita .	The Construction of Construction	58.8					shape are All	1	0
URNER .	Crecificitiest	10.0					dimension data	1	0

## **Common error messages**

## Your currently used shop domain isn't associated with your shopware account.

This message can appear, when your license does not match your domain. So keep your domain in mind when renting plugins and when you work on your account. If you e.g. license a plugin to the domain **www.mydomain.co.uk** and afterwards want to install the license in a shop called **mydomain.co.uk** this endeavor will surely fail, as the license-domain does not match the installation domain. If this happened, feel free to contact our sales department to get your license renewed.

## License check for module "xxxxxx" has failed.

If you get this message while installing or activating a plugin, the license for the installed plugin is missing in the License Manager. Add a valid license to avoid this message.

**Alternatively** a missing host entry in your shop configuration may cause this problem. In this case, set the host correctly in the **Shop settings** under **Configuration** > **Basic settings** > **Shop settings** > **Shops** 

## Integrity constraint violation: 1062 duplicate entry 'xxxxxx' for key 'xxxxx'

At the installation, the plugin will add database entries or tables that already exist. This error may occur, if a plugin's installation routine doesn't check for existing tables and database entries. However, if you are not sure what to do or your efforts didn't solve the problem, feel free to contact our support.

## **Orders-Exception-2**

This error will appear, if you try to download a plugin you already rented in the store. Technically this error can have multiple causes, practically in most cases, the license domain is not equal to the installation domain. Feel free to contact our sales department to get your license renewed.

# Plugin: Migrating from other shop systems to Shopware

# Migrating from other shop systems

With the Migrations plugin, Shopware provides various options to migrate from an existing shop system to Shopware 4 or 5.

The Shopware migration whitepaper with additional tips & tricks you can find here: Migration whitepaper

## Supported shop systems

The following shop systems are currently supported:

- Magento up to 1.7.0.2 and 1.8.1.0 up to 1.9.3.4
- Magento2 2.1.5 up to 2.1.8
- OXID eShop up to 4.9.7
- xt:Commerce VEYTON 4.0 up to 4.1
- Gambio up to GX 2.7.2.0
- xtModified & xt:Commerce 3.04
- Prestashop 1.4 and 1.5 up to 1.6.1.4
- WooCommerce 2.5.5

Our flexible Import interface allows you to easily maintain all shop data which cannot be migrated using this tool.

You currently use a shop system, which is currently not supported by our migration tool? Then you can get support by our Shopware partners at migrating to Shopware.

#### **Overview of migratable fields**

	Magento	OXID	VEYTON	Gambio	ХТС/ХТМ	Prestashop	SW3. BETA
Shop properties							
Order status	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Payment methods	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*

Tax rates	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Category structure	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Customer reviews	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Manufacturers	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Customer data							
Address data	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Customer passwords	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Customer numbers	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Orders	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Customer groups	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Items							
Item numbers	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Item basic info	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
One-dimensional variants	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Multidimensional variants	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Properties	Yes	Yes	No*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Item images	Yes***	Yes***	Yes***	Yes***	Yes***	Yes***	Yes*

ltems in stock	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Customer group prices	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Graduated prices	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*
Search terms	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes*

\* only partially supported by the current plugin version

\*\* will be imported as a variant by the current plugin version

\*\*\* thumbnails had to be regenerate new via the mediamanager in the backend of shopware

Be sure to always use the most current version of the plugin, which can be downloaded here.

# Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

Next, go to **Content > Shop migration**.



# What to do before and after the migration

Before the migration

- In the backend, go to Configuration > System info and check to see if the system requirements have been fulfilled. You may encounter errors if these requirements are not met.
- Database access is required in order for the old shop system to migrate to Shopware 4. The database must either be located locally on the Shopware system, or access must be set up externally.
- Create a standard manufacturer.
- Shared property fields from your old system should already be created in your Shopware installation
  as a property group set. This is to avoid unnecessary interruptions in the migration process due to the
  mapping of individual properties.
- Check which customer groups need to be migrated and create them in Shopware 4.
- Check which price groups need to be migrated and create in Shopware 4.
- Check which languages need to be migrated and create them in Shopware 4.
- Activate maintenance mode for the shop that you wish to migrate.
- Language subshops must be activated in advance so that they can be mapped later on.

#### After the migration

• Once the migration is complete, first check to see that the number ranges are continuous and adjust them if necessary.

# Starting the migration

Before starting the migration, you should always create a new file and database backup of your Shopware installation. The attributes of your shop will be displayed during the migration process. Each attribute will be return with one of the following messages: **Mapping successful (1)**, **Mapping Optional** (2) or **Mapping urgently required (3)**.

Name	Mapping	
∃ Gruppe: Spra	che	1
Deutsch	Deutsch	0
English	Englisch	0
∃ Gruppe: Prei	sgruppen	2
Preis A		
Preis B		
Preis B Preis C		<u>A</u>
	os	

## Step 1: Building links to the shop system

The first step is to select which shop to migrate to (1).

Now create a link to the MySQL database of the new shop. You need to enter a **User name (2)** and **Password (3)** for the MySQL server.

Now add the **Address (4)** and **Standard port (5)** of the MySQL server. If the databases of the destination server and the Shopware installation are on the same server, enter "localhost". Otherwise, the respective names of the servers should be entered here.

Now enter the **Prefix of the database table to be imported (6)**. If you are using a different prefix in your old shop, you can leave this setting on "default".

Lastly, we can select the **Database to migrate to (7)**. If the access data at the top is properly entered, all of the server tables should now be available and listed here. If no databases are listed, check the previously entered access data for the MySQL server.

At the end of the form, you can find the button labeled **Reset current Shopware shop (8)**. This may be necessary, because the migration plugin does not update or replace exisiting categories or items. If existing categories or items are found, the migration is interrupted with an error message.

Items, item images, customer data, manufacturers, orders and categories will be permanently deleted in this step.

If you do not have the access data of your old shop, you can find it in the administration of your hosting package. Alternatively, there is also the option of contacting your hosting provider directly. If you only have the MySQL dump, import the database into your structure and speak with them locally.

op-Illigration				80	
Wählun Sie ei					
Wählen Sie den	Shop, den Sie nach Shop	oware megtieren müchten			
Profile	OVD eShap bis 4.7.1		0		
Daterbank-ID	nstellungen				
Datenbant-Enst	teilungen für den Chop, o	ten Ilie migneren wollen			
Benutzer:	192			2	
Passwort	0				
Server:	0				
Port	detsut				
Prefix	default			6	
Datentiarik:	(mit_471			0	
Den aktuellen	Shopware-Shop zuri	icksetzen			
Atitei lint		Kunden töschen	Beweitungen Mochen	Asswell anticizer	
Kategorien	löschen	Kunden und Bestellungen Köschen	Hersteller Ibschen		
UEder tosc	hen				
Produkt-Ei	genschaften löschen				
Gewähne	states losistes 8				
				Weter	

Step 2: Shop migration

After completing the first step, the second now involves importing all important shop settings. By doubleclicking in the mapping field, you can open a dropdown field with the settings.

Here you have the possibility of importing attributes/properties, languages, order status, payment types or price groups into your new shop.

The magic mapping supports this step by automatically selecting appropriate Shopware fields for each attribute. This can be used throughout the entire mapping. Each selection can also be changed manually of course.

Name .	Mapping		flame	Hopping			
B Gruppei Sprache			G Gruppe: Bestell-Status				
Deutsch	Hauptakep Deutsch	0	fies 🚺	Titte solition	-	A	
Englah	Englach		ffearbebet	A CONTRACTOR OF		A	
			Problems	In Bearbedung (Wartet)		A	
E Gruppe: Preisgruppe	et.		Komplett øbgeschlossen				
Preis A	Ditte wählen	A	El GrupperZahlungsarten	Tolwoise abgeschassen Starsiert / Abgelehnt			
Preis B	Bitte wählen	A	Nachrahme	Zyr Leferung beret. Telweise ausgelefert	1	0	
Pres C	Bitle wählen	4	Kredikarle.				
			BankeinzugLastschrift	Komplett ausgetiertert	. 0	4000	
il Gruppe: Shops			Versuskasse	Winung netwendlu	11	0	
0XID #Shep 4	* Haupitatiop Geutech		Rectrung	Abustrachen		0	
			Empty	TS - Ardrag in Boarbehung		A	
				TS - Antrag er folgreich			
			Gruppe: Eigenschaften-Optione		U		
			Design	Filmerester moths		0	
			Anzeige	Eigenschaften Gruppe		0	
			Hodel	Eigenachañon Gruppe		0	
			Material	Eigenschaften Gruppe		0	
			Evalution	Egasachaften Gruppe		0	
			Beschaffenheit	Egenschaften Gruppe.		0	
			Grotte	Eigenacheffen Gruppe		0	
			Farbe	Eigenschaften Gruppe		0	

Keep in mind that when mapping price and customer groups, every group from the source shop can only be mapped once. Mapping multiple times could result in the groups from the source shop being overwritten.

## Step 3: Import settings

In the final step of the migration, you are able to choose the desired settings for the migration. When creating a new item, the manufacturer field is required and so a manufacturer must be selected from the list.

In the box "Shop path to item images (e.g., http://domain.de/shop):" specify the path of the old shop.

The "Default manufacturer" field is only relevant for items that have no other manufacturers assigned! You will have the possibility to change the manufacturer once the migration is complete.

If items from the old shop system have been assigned a manufacturer, this information will automatically be carried over to Shopware 4.

Import-Einstellungen				
Produkte importieren:	1	Produkt-Béder importieren:	2	Q
übersetzungen importieren:	1	Kunden importieren:	2	
Produkt-Eigenschaften importieren:		Bewertungen importieren:	•	
Kategorien importieren:		Bestellungen importieren:	•	
Kundengroppen-Preise importieren:		Import abschlieflen:	2	
Varianten generieren:		Standard-Hersteller:	Shopware	
		Shop-Pfad (bapw. http://www.example.org/shop oder /var/www/shop):	http://ga.shspiviere.in/oxid471	
Erweiterte Import-Einstellungen				
Behandlung ungültiger Produkt-Nummerr	u.	O Fehlen	meldung ausgeben	
		<ul> <li>Durch</li> </ul>	gültige Produkt-Nummern ersetzer	1
		O Trottos	im importieren (nicht empfohlen)	
-		•		
Den aktuellen Shopware-Shop z	urucksetze			

# Debug mode

The migrations plugin also contains a debug mode. This can be activated in the plugin configuration in the Plugin Manager.

	aften		
Schlüssel:	SwagMigration	Version:	2.1.3
Name:	Shopware Migration	Namespace:	Backend
Author:	shopware AG	Source:	Community
Copyright:	Copyright © 2012, shopware AG	Hinzugefügt am:	Fri May 17 2013 09:25:55 GMT+0200
Support:	http://www.forum.shopware.de	Installiert am:	Fri May 17 2013 09:26:04 GMT+0200
Link:		Letztes Update amu	Fri May 17 2013 09:26:04 GMT+0200
	kontinulerrich weiterentwickelt. Weite Die Daten können aus folgenden Sh OVID eShop 4.4.5 bis 4.6.5 Magento 1.4.2 bis 1.7.2 st. Commerce VE/TON 4.0 st. Commerce 3.0.4 Gambio GX 2.0.10 PrestaShop 1.5.2		
Aktiv:	Aldwiert das Plugin und deren H	looks und Subscribes	
		bug-Ausgabe geschrieben	werden? Achtung! Kann die Geschwindigkeit
bug-Ausgabe:	Soll eine De des Imports negal	lv beeinflussen.	

If the debug output is active, all queries will be written to the /files/migration.log in the source database. Here you can find, for example, the recently performed actions and an SQP EXPLAIN for the query that defines how the SQL server processed the query (slow file sorts or fast index access) as well as the duration of the query.

This data is useful for identifying non-optimized queries. You may also refer to the following list of indexes in order to speed up queries.

Activating the debug output will negatively affect the performance of the migration script!

# **Tips for migration**

## **Optimizing the MySQL server**

A correct configuration of the MySQL server is required for a decent performance.

For the purpose of consistency, the data being imported at different locations must be sorted. For instance, doing so will prevent child entities from being imported before parent entities. This is generally the case for all items and prices. If problems are encountered here, additional indexes can be used or the buffer soft of the SQL server can be increased.

The MySQL documentation recommends:

- Increasing sort\_buffer\_size
- Increasing read\_rnd\_buffer\_size

## **Optimizing the migrated database**

Partial Joins are required for a complete data import. However, in the source database there are no indexes, as these are not automatically imported by the script.

Partial Joins are required for a complete data import, which is possible when the source database contains indexes. Since these are not automatically set by the script, they must be added to the source database.

Create a backup before adding indexes to your source database.

The following is a list of possible additional indexes:

#### Oxid

#### Item import:

ALTER TABLE `oxarticles` ADD INDEX `oxid\_oxparentid` (`OXID`, `OXPARENTID`)

#### **Customer import:**

ALTER TABLE `oxobject2group` ADD INDEX `oxobjectid\_oxgroupsid` (`OXOBJECTID`, `OXGROUPSID`)

## Veyton

#### Item import:

ALTER TABLE `oxarticles` ADD INDEX `oxid\_oxparentid` (`OXID`, `OXPARENTID`)

#### **Customer import:**

ALTER TABLE `oxobject2group` ADD INDEX `oxobjectid\_oxgroupsid` (`OXOBJECTID`, `OXGROUPSID`)

#### **XTC, Gambio**

#### Importing order details:

ALTER TABLE `orders\_products\_attributes` ADD INDEX ( `orders\_products\_id` )

# **General tips**

After the import, there may be different databases. This is because different shops have different minimum requirements for their respective data.

Here are a few examples:

- Customer evaluations: In Shopware, every item can be evaluated once per customer (tracked by email). If the customer made more than one evaluation in the source shop, the extra evaluations will be lost.
- **Customers**: In Shopware it is not possible to register multiple times with the same email address (if valid account are used). Duplicate account will not be imported.

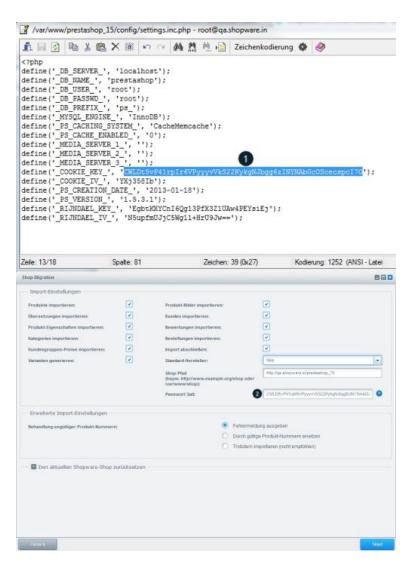
#### OXID eShop bis 4.7.1

- **Properties**: Prior to migration, create a group into which all item properties will be migrated from Oxid. If no properties are assigned to an item, then properties from the created group will be automatically assigned.
- **Properties**: In mapping, all existing property options will be displayed. These will only be imported later if at least one item uses the option.
- **Delivery addresses**: Alternative delivery addresses are not imported. This is valid after migration: billing address = billing address.

#### Prestashop

- **Configurators**: For technical reasons the items will be transferred directly into configurators.
- **Configurators**: Since there are no weight surcharge configurators in Shopware, this data will be lost.
- **Configurators**: There are no price discount configurators in Shopware. Overcharge < 0 will be ignored.
- Passwords: Passwords can only be migrated, if the salt is entered. For the salt, the variable \_COOKIE\_KEY\_ in der Datei /config/settings.inc.php (1) is used. Copy the salt and enter it into the Passwort Salt (2) field.

If the customers should be able to login with their old passwords after the migration, then the migration tool should not be deinstalled, because the password encoder must remain. After a customer has logged in once, the password is imported and this restriction no longer applies to that customer.



#### xtModified & xt:Commerce bis 3.04

- **Delivery times**: Delivery times cannot be imported they are mapped to the fallback delivery time of Shopware (Configuration > Shopping cart > Item details).
- **Configurators**: For technical reasons the items will be transferred directly into configurators.
- **Configurators**: Since there are no weight surcharge configurators in Shopware, this data will be lost.
- **Configurators**: There are no price discount configurators in Shopware. Overcharge < 0 will be ignored.
- **Delivery addresses**: Alternative delivery addresses are not imported. This is valid after migration: billing address = billing address.

Gambio bis GX 2.0.10

- **Delivery times**: Delivery times cannot be imported they are mapped to the fallback delivery time of Shopware (Configuration > Shopping cart > Item details).
- **Configurators**: For technical reasons the items will be transferred directly into configurators.
- **Configurators**: Since there are no weight surcharge configurators in Shopware, this data will be lost.
- **Configurators**: There are no price discount configurators in Shopware. Overcharge < 0 will be ignored.
- **Delivery addresses**: Alternative delivery addresses are not imported. This is valid after migration: billing address = billing address.

#### Magento

- **Properties**: Prior to migration, create a group into which all item properties of Magento will be migrated.
- **User-defined properties**: These are imported and appear in the attribute mapping. If this should be migrated, appropriate attribute fields must be created in Shopware beforehand.

#### Veyton

- **Properties**: Item properties are not imported.
- **Delivery addresses**: Alternative delivery addresses are not imported. This is valid after migration: billing address = billing address.

#### WooCommerce

- **Paymentmeans:** Can not be imported, because the data structure is not compatible. Here the default value "prepayment" is used.
- **Manufacturer:** Because WooCommerse does not use suppliers the default supplier is used.
- **Customer numbers:** Because WooCommerce does not use customer numbers Shopware will create individual ones.
- Customer group prices: Because WooCommerce does not provide customer groups you can not import customer group prices.
- Graduated prices: WooCommerse does not support graduated prices so only the first price is imported.

## FAQ / common issues

#### General: items are assigned to the wrong categories

If this is the case, the category tree must be rebuilt in the Shopware performance module.

#### Per request only 1 data element is migrated

If the migration is only processing 1 element per step you probably have a performance issue on the server. Raise the max\_execution\_time in the php-settings of your server sigificantly. The read of the elements is very slow and it could occur that the migration plugin has no time left while prepearing the data. In this case the migration plugin imports one order and then calls for a new request.

# Magento: SQLSTATE(HY000): General error: 1116 Too many tables; MySQL can only use 61 tables in a join

This happens, when too many magento attribute tables will be joined, doe to technical limitations of MySQL the server will crash.

**Possible solution:** Changing \Shopware\_Components\_Migration\_Profile\_Magento::getProductSelect:# With the method getAttributes() the selected attributes will be joined and later be attached to the item query in createTableSelect(). The return value in getAttributes() can be individualized, that only the neede attributes will be loaded.

Alternatively the attributes will be identified by the following criteria:

```
AND et.entity_type_code='catalog_product'
AND ea.frontend_input!=''
AND (ea.is_user_defined=1 OR ea.attribute_code IN ('visibility', 'meta_description', 'meta_tit
AND ea.attribute_code NOT IN ('cost', 'manufacturer')
```

If youm, say, set the field "frontend\_input" for not needed attributes to "", no attributes should be selected.

#### XTC/Gambio: Items will be migrated without description

If your items will be migrated without name and description, this is mostly connected with language shops. If your, say, german language shop your main shop, the Migration will think, that Showpare is configured the same. If this was not happened, Migration cannot assign the description to the items and puts them as translation.

Here you have 2 possible solutions:

- Change the main shop to "german", you have to change the main category and the language to german for this.
- Change in your source shops table languages the field sort\_order, that the english language has a lower value than the german. Here we recommend to work in a copy of the database or that you made a backup before!

After this adjustment the items should assign correctly.

# **Plugin: PayPal**

# **General Information**

The PayPal plug-in enables you to offer direct online payment (optionally through Express Checkout) as well as payment by installments, pay upon invoice and other payment methods.

These additional payment methods are made available to you via two different products of the PayPal company, which you can find in the PayPal plugin. The new variant for the provision of additional payment methods is called **PayPal Checkout**. In order to be able to use PayPal Checkout, you have to be activated once. You can find more information on this in the section **Configuring the API settings** under the item **Authorise**.

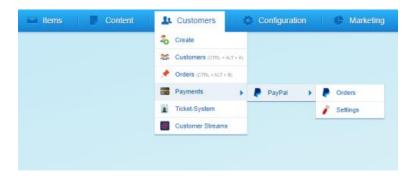
The old variant is called **PayPal Plus**, but it is no longer possible to activate it.

The PayPal Express plugin is not required separately. The functionality there is included here in the plugin.

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

After installing the PayPal plug-in, you will find the modules **Orders** and **Settings** belonging to the plug-in in the backend under **Customers** > **Payments** > **PayPal**.



## **Compatibility to previous PayPal plug-ins**

The plug-in PayPal offers you the possibility to transfer old orders to the new order overview module. This way all your PayPal orders will be displayed in the order overview of the new plug-in and you can part with the old PayPal plug-ins.

The orders that were processed with the old PayPal or PayPal Plus Plug-in will then appear in the new order overview and will be assigned to the correct payment method. As you can see, migrated orders are added with the addition "(old)". In addition, you will find a note about this compatibility mode in the order details, as not all information is displayed, e.g. for an order that was processed via the PayPal Plug-in. This includes e.g. the transaction history.

To take over your orders, you must first uninstall the previous PayPal plug-ins. Then you can open the order overview: All previous orders are now already stored, no further steps are necessary to transfer them.

nyPatProducts									200
							Q. 10000.		
Parking-	NA HER	201010		from and .	Campo stat.	(100 million ) (	Pagenet Make		
1284.6.018	paulors.	Tropper tropper	10007	20.00	A CONTRACTOR OF	- capito	Ciper.	1111	
12454 (H)	Indust	TYDESIA TOWNER	10008	1.010.00	To a company of the local division of the	Taken .	1940	2.11	
Carbo (10)	Deutsch;	Indeparte include te	30000	2104	A	- Open-	Dpm	2.12	
									O freadly that is not have

Please verify the steps on a test system and make a backup, prior to changing the live system. This will give you a easy overview what to expect and a way to roll back the system.

Accepted orders can be refunded as usual, but the payment process only shows the most current state will be displayed.

Only transactions of type "Sale" are supported. In the settings of the previous PayPal Plug-in, this corresponds to the option "Complete payment immediately (Sale)" for payment completion.

The current PayPal Plug-in is not compatible with any of the previous PayPal Plug-ins! It can therefore not be used with PayPal Express, PayPal Plus or PayPal Installment Payment in parallel. So please make sure to uninstall these plug-ins first when using the current PayPal Plug-in. Please make sure that all orders have been accepted before you delete the old PayPal plug-ins completely. This way you can avoid possible data loss.

#### **Initial setup**

After you have installed the plug-in, you can configure it in the PayPal module under **settings**.

#### Overview

The configuration module of the PayPal plug-in is divided into four areas, each of which can be accessed using the tab at the top of the window:

- General settings (1)
- PayPal Express Checkout integration (2)
- PayLater (3)
- PayPal Pay Upon Invoice Integration(4)
- PayPal Advanced Credit Debit Card Integration (5)
- PayPal Plus integration (6)

0					Second alloge	Denoiting	
•	Contraction of Local	and distant	Street Street	and a state of the	-	(Are)	
Pal-Bar PayPal bullari m pare fot your PayPal busin	ne checkica/I sis account here: (104), /h	INCA DATIVISATI CONTACTA	NED ROOM AND A CONTRACTOR	a.checkad			
nable for this strong	💽 Dativ is activity PayPo	a for this stop.					
WI Settings							
Une							
CIHARD							0
Chief-Jacott							0
PayFal Merchant ID							0
		Advanced Credit This	Debit Card requ in your account	To PayPal			
							_
Bandtox							
							0
							0
							0
Pageta descendentes	Dawn selfs rage						
	C Drains to builthe ethics	és.			BO F	NY orthogo	Ing-the webblack
nder sondbase Aufterent	C Data to sur the steps	6a.			(42)	it stage	ing to written
natio sectore Automotion Defuzioner	Contract to test the image				642	(V orbage)	11 p 14 october 1 p 1
nder sonders Auftanze Influeiour symmet progenitien:					(67)	de ortequi	
nder senden: Automotion Infrantieur nyment gegunden: and name on the PayPal page:					(ing)	(1 ) *****	
ndels santifies: Addense Unitatiour system acqualities: sant name on the FayFal page: when cart	(CAPTURE) Companie payme	ed intersectionity			Ger	it engine	
ndie sandbez	CAPTURE Compute promo	ed intersectionity	nia		(Beg)	it stage i	
ndels sandher Addresse Mithariour Nymers acquedies: Hent neer so the PayPel arge: Hent neer so the PayPel arge:	CAPTURE Compute promo	el investisity	nte		(47)	(Vottage ) (	
And the second s	CAPTURE Compute promo	el investisity	nta		Ge 7	(Vottage ) (	
nde serler: A 2000 Dittrior sertes and the Poplation sertes and the Poplation sertes and the Poplation sertes and the Poplation sertes and the Poplation set the Poplation States	CAPTURE Compute promo	el investisity	nia		Ge J		
nada sandhar Adduste Maharibur nyrenst acqualans ann anna as the Payfal page aked sant ayribu tachtag page again kölder:	CAPTURE Compute promo	el investisity					

In the tab General Settings you can set the API settings for PayPal in addition to the general settings for the behaviour and error handling of the plug-in.

#### Activation and shop selection

The PayPal settings can be configured for each shop using the drop-down menu **Select Shop (1)** in the upper right corner. So you have the possibility to define different settings for sub shops and language shops.

To use PayPal in your shop, you have to activate PayPal with the checkbox **Enable for this shop (2)**.

			Select shop:		English	7
					Deutsch	
General settings	PayPat Express Checkoul energy dram	PayPal Plus allegration	PayPat extellments anografice		English	
				-	14 4 Page 1	of 1
	yPal button in the checkoutl ir PayPal business account here.	ntips //www.pavpal.com	vde/webapps/mop/express-	checko	u.	

# **Configuration of the API settings**

In the next step you have to enter your PayPal access data received from PayPal.

**Client-ID (1):** Here you enter the PayPal REST-ID This is used by the plugin to authenticate itself with the PayPal API.

**Client-Secret (2):** At this point you enter the REST-API client secret, which the plug-in also uses to authenticate with the PayPal API.

**PayPal Merchant ID (3):** The ID is necessary for the **PayPal Pay Upon Invoice Integration** and **PayPal Advanced Credit Debit Card Integration**. You can find the exact ID in your account.

**Enable sandbox (4):** Check this box if you just want to test the PayPal integration. Please note that the sandbox environment has its own access data.

Authorise (5): Here you will be redirected to PayPal's registration page to automatically receive Client ID, Client Secret and PayPal Merchant ID.

**Test API settings (6):** With the help of this button you can test the access data you have entered. The result of the test will be displayed directly in the backend by a message at the top of the screen.

**Register webhook (47:** The registration of the webhook can be triggered manually at this point. Normally, the webhook is automatically transmitted and set up. More information can be found in the next section.

Chertelito		
Chert Averat:		
Paymer Manufacet St.		
Satubos	mosite and PayEx Advanced Credit Dabit Card requires the PayExi mechant ID is function correctly. You sa To PayExi	
_	and and a second s	
Sendore		:

### **Configuration of the Webhooks**

Webhooks are a web technology similar to push notifications. This allows PayPal to send updates about your transactions to your Shopware shop even after the fact.

Since PayPal Plus has been replaced by PayPal Checkout, the plugin implementation does not receive webhooks. If you no longer use PayPal Plus, you can skip the following section.

Please go to the website <u>developer.paypal.com</u> and log in with your PayPal account. There you will find the menu item "My Apps & Credentials" in the "Dashboard" area. If you select your app from the REST API apps stored there, you will be taken to the Webhooks area. To add the Webhook, click on "Add Webhook".

The Webhook URL must have the following format: *https://example.com/PaypalUnifiedWebhook/execute* This is your domain with shop addition, if available. This URL corresponds to the Notify-URL, but differs in the addition "webhook". Regarding the spelling, you can use both "CamelCase" and "snake\_case". With the setting "Event Types", "All Events" must also be activated.

## **Classic PayPal**

By entering the API data and activation in the tab Basic Settings, you use the classic PayPal for your shop. Thus your customers are able to pay for their orders with their PayPal account. PayPal also offers other payment methods, for example the PayPal Shortcut (Express Checkout), but also other payment methods such as credit card or purchase on account. The entirety of payment methods is summarised under the term PayPal Checkout (and formerly PayPal Plus).

Please note that some settings in the tab Basic Settings do not only apply to the classic PayPal, but also to PayPal Plus or Express Checkout, if they are activated.

## Configuration

Under Behaviour in the tab Basic Settings you configure the following settings:

Payment acquisition:	(CAPTURE) Complete payment worsidately	- 0
Brand name on the PayPal page		6
Submittort	<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	6
PayPal landing page:	No proheserica (incorrenandod)	- 6
Logo in sideber:	Evable to show the PayPal logo in the standard sidetae	
Order number prefix:		6
Use Smart Payment Buttons:		6

#### Payment acquisition (1):

- (CAPTURE) Complete payment immediately: Payment is automatically collected immediately
- **(AUTHORIZE) Delayed payment collection**: Payment is only authorized . The collection must be made separately.

**Brand name on PayPal page (2):** The text stored here will be displayed as brand name on the PayPal payment page.

**Submit cart (3):** Here you can select whether the shopping cart should be transferred to PayPal. This is strongly recommended to improve PayPal's risk assessment.

**PayPal landing page (4):** Here you can choose whether the PayPal landing page should display the registration form or the login screen.

**Logo in sidebar (5):** If you activate this option, the PayPal logo will be displayed in the sidebar of your storefront.

Please note that the following requirements must be met to display your logo on the PayPal site:

- The image must be accessible externally.
- The picture must be accessible under HTTPS
- The image must be one of the following file types: .gif, .jpg, or .png

**Oder number prefix (6):** Here you can determine which text is appended to the original order number, e.g. myShopSW20001. This option is only available if you have activated the previous option "Transfer

order number to PayPal".

**Use Smart Payment Buttons (7):** From plugin version 4.1.3 you can use the smart buttons provided by Paypal. You can familiarise yourself with the look and function of the buttons <u>here</u>.

## **Error handling**

The PayPal plug-in enables you to display error messages and activate logging with the error handling.

**Display errors (1):** Activating this option causes the communication error message to be displayed in the shop.

**Logging (2):** At this point you define how strict this logging may be. You have the choice to log only errors (option "Normal") or to log all types of errors (option "Advanced"). All types means in this context that normal events and warnings will be logged in addition to errors.

You can find the log files of your Shopware installation in the directory /var/log. For this plugin the log entries are stored in the file that starts with "plugin\_production-". Every day a new log file is created.

Display errors:		6
Logging:	Normal	- 6

### **Frontend view**

If you have activated PayPal, your customers will find the following payment method in the order process:

Demo Shop		Questions about your order? 12345-123456789 days ware? to an or 18 days		< Black to the s
Address	>	2 Payment & shipping	>	Complete order
				Next 3
Change payment mi				
* Paid in advance	<ul> <li>easy, fast and securive wered directly upon n</li> </ul>			
Cash on delivery (including 2.00 Bar	to WAT)			
<ul> <li>Involce Payment by involc</li> </ul>	e. Shapware provides	automatic involcing for all customers on orders after the	rfiest, vi order to avoid defa	ults on payment.
0 SEPA SEPA direct debit				

The order completion page remains as usual from Shopware. However, the customer is redirected to PayPal after his click. Here the customer can then log in with his PayPal account.

After the customer has registered and confirmed the order by PayPal, the order is completed. The customer then sees the following page:

emo Shop	Questions about your order? 12345-123456389 Deep from 133 am to 1238 am	< Beck to the
	Thank you for your order with Englis We have set you the order confirmation by e We recommend to activitie order confirmation	irruit. I bekow
Billing and shipping address Ms Trashe Test Disrupter To	Back to the shop     Print your order confin     Priose notice that the print functionality is not supported on	all available dences.
48624 Schoppingen Deutschland		Selected payment method: PayPol Shipping method: Standard delivery
Product	Qu	Shipping method: Scondard delivery antity Sum
Deutschland		Shipping method: standard delivery
Product Hauptartikel	0301 Surr:	Shipping method: Standard derivery           antity         Sum           1         6453.55*           6453.55*         6453.55*
Product Hauptartikel	0307 Surr: Mapping code	Shipping method::Standard delivery           antity         Sum           1         cess 55*           6455.55*         c455.55*
Product Hauptartikel	0301 Surr:	Shipping method: Standard derivery           antitity         Sum           1         6653.55*           6253.55*         623.05*

Here the customer can find the **transaction number (1)** of his order, which PayPal can use to identify his order. Accordingly, the order appears with this number and the payment status "**Fully paid**" **(1)** in the order overview in the backend of your shop:

Grans																- 3	968
the seture					cattery.												
frame	-	10	24	Order the	Order m.	Amount	Daniel	Equinat		Stat	Guiterie .	Ekilai			Current anymeth		
			14	108.	2001	405.85		Per.	Ster.	Dept	Test, Testine		- 007		Completelp paul		21
Te		菌		108.		15.08		241	Der.	Devi	Teri, Terine		100		Completely paid.		11
Order eleter				108	29008	45.0		211	5ł#	Devi	Test, Testine		- 099		Completely paid	24	21
				298.	29008	204.00		24/	594	Dect.	Test, Testine		0.00		Comptenielo partit.		11
Payment datase	June 1	(*)		298.		65.00		PH-	510.	Dect	Test, Testine		099		Completelp peid	2.4	21
Payment method	South .	*3				45.99		Fer-	210	Deut	Set. Settle		099		Competitive paint	20	21
			9	298	294005	65:50		Pay-	2844	Dept	Terres, Test		Core		Clamphetaly paid	20	1
Dreparty form	Jairry .		14	258		45.98	89.0	Asy-	244.	Decl .	Terr. Service		000		Completely paid	2.6	11
Calleriner group.			10			21.08		Pad	28.94	Dept	her, heriter		098		Open	2.4	11
Catalon Starts		(T)		318	20002	201.56			38.6	theat	Monhertranet, Mile (Moni-		Cpe		Oper	24	1
Here:			942	318.	20001	382.54		dentes.	33.34	Shut	Kandargruppe Metta, H3		Case		Cipae.	26	11
Prop.	Subject 1																
Patient																	
		. • 1															
Shipping country:																	
10000																	
Silling country																	
(Marane)		100															
Descente																	
Date .	hana																
			IR	1.100	11.10		1.11.5	0				Daming 1-	0.011	Manmar of a		3	
				er praifiner													

### **Backend view**

There is a button which redirects to PayPal where you can enter the tracking ID.

## PayPal shipping tracking

With Paypal version 6.0.0 it is possible to transfer the shipping tracking ID of the shipping service provider to Paypal. The customer can then track the shipment of his order via his PayPal account. After successful onboarding you will find in your shipping methods under free text fields the possibility to store a default shipping service provider.

Freibextfelder		
Carrier code:	DHL_DEUTSCHE_POST	0
	PayPar offices baseling the orders presented draugh PayPal. To use this, specify a default shapping carrier, which sure be overretter in the orders Pay a bit of all stapping presenters	

You can find a complete list of possible shipping providers here.

If you now enter a tracking ID of the shipping service provider in the order details, this will automatically be transferred to the customer's PayPal account. There he can monitor the shipment of the order.

elected shipping type: artner ID:	Add tracking code to Payout	
Mail:	testro@shopware.com	
aid on:		
racking code:		
hipping costs (EUR):	0	- 0
hipping costs net (EUR):	0	\$
hipping tax rate:	1	10
eder status:	Open	٠
ayment status:	Completely paid	•
eder reference:		
equested delivery date:		
ee text fields		
Freitextfelder		
Carrier code:	Performance and the control of the c	5

## **Order overview**

The PayPal plug-in offers a display in the standard order module as well as a separate overview of the orders processed by the plug-in. You can find this order overview under **Customers** > **Payments** > **PayPal** > **Orders**. Here you can see which orders were made with which PayPal type (Standard, Express, Plus, Installment).

In the right half of the window you can see the data PayPal has for the respective transaction. They are structured into the areas **Order**, **PayPal transaction** and **Payment history**.

## Refund

If you need to make a refund via PayPal, you can do it in the **Payment history tab (1)** using the **Make a new refund button (2)**.

										-	-
- See	22	an a	1.1	 -	2*	110	2.4	111	1	iteres.	
								Hul			
							1	-			
 and the state of t							-				

Once you click on it, a modal window will open where you can enter the amount and the booking number for the refund. You can also use the radiobutton to specify whether the total amount of the order is affected. For example, partial amounts are also possible if only one item from an order is returned.

New refund		×
Maximum amount:	28.89	
Amount:	12	*
Total amount:		
Booking number:		
Cancel		Execute

Once a refund is made, the order's payment status also changes in the Order module in the backend. The change in payment status of the order changes as follows when a refund is made:

The payment status is automatically changed to "Re-crediting" if the total amount is refunded.
 If only a part of the amount is refunded, the payment status is automatically set to "Partially paid".

## **Express Checkout**

The plug-in offers the possibility of express checkout. This way your customer does not have to register in the shop for his order, the order will be processed only by his PayPal account.

The express function does not apply to ESD products. These can only be purchased with a customer account.

Configuration

The configuration of the Express Checkout can be found in the separate tab **PayPal Express Checkout Integration** in the plugin settings. Below are the configuration options:

	<ul> <li>the PayPai button on the product detail page for maximum conversion.</li> <li>PayPai Express Shortout here: <u>https://www.paypai.com/de/webapps/inpp/express-checkout</u></li> </ul>
Pay now' on detail page:	If this option is active, the Express Checkout button will be shown on each product detail page.
"Pay now' on cart:	If this option is active, the Express Checkout button will be shown on the cart.
Pay now' on Off-Canvas/modal cart.	If this option is active, the Express Checkout button will be shown on the Oft-Cennes/model cart
'Pay now' on login page:	If this option is active, the Express Checkout button will be shown on the login and register page.
"Pay now' on listing pages:	If this option is active, the Express Checkout button will be shown on listing pages.
Button color:	Gold
Button shape:	Roctangular
Button size:	Medium
Submit cart:	If this option is active, the cart will be submitted to PayPal for Express orders

'Pay now' on detail page (1): Here you can specify whether the PayPal Express button is displayed on the item details page.

**'Pay now' on cart (2):** Here you specify whether the PayPal Express Button should be shown in the shopping cart.

**'Pay now' on Off-Canvas/modal cart (3):** If you activate this option, the Express Checkout button will be displayed in the Off-Canvas/Modal shopping cart.

**'Pay now' on login page (4):** Here you can determine whether the PayPal Express button is offered on the login page.

**'Pay now' on listing pages(5):** If you enable this option, the Express Checkout button will be displayed on listing pages.

**Button colour (6):** This option offers you some colours in which the PayPal Express Button can be displayed. Gold, blue, silver, and black are offered.

**Button shape (7):** Here you set the shape of the PayPal Express Button. You can choose between round and square and set the shape of the PayPal Express Button. You can choose between round and square.

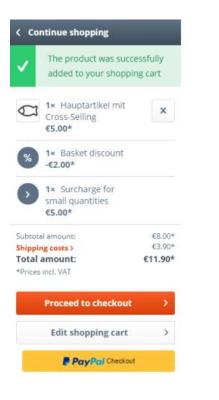
**Button size (8):** This option allows you to specify how large the PayPal Express Button should be displayed. You can choose from small, medium, large, and Responsive.

**Submit cart (9):** Here you can choose whether the customer's shopping cart, i.e. the exact positions of the order, may be transferred to PayPal. If this option is deactivated, only the total amount is transferred.

#### **Frontend view**

The ordering process using PayPal Express is similar to the classic PayPal order process. The difference is that your customer does not need to create an account in your store to place an order. Instead, they can log in directly to PayPal with a button and complete the order. This PayPal Express button can be located in the shopping cart on the login page and on the item details page, depending on the configuration.

The Express button in the off-canvas shopping cart looks like this



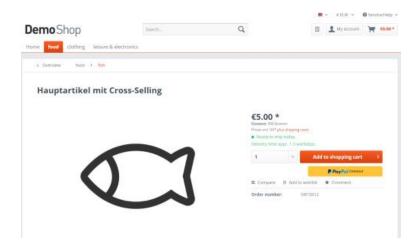
When your customer edits his shopping cart, the view looks like this:

			a second	Checkout	
				PayPal Deckar	
roduct		Quantity	Price per unit	Sum	
a	Houptartikel mit Cross-Seiling Dröer number SW10012 Sendy to ship today Belavery time agait. 1-3 workdwyn	1	65.00°	65.00*	×
%	Basket discount			-€2.00*	
0	Surcharge for small quantities			65.00°	
Enteritary	number >				
Enter vou	ther sode	Sum. Shipping costs		68.00*	
hipping of	NIS .	Total amount:		¢11.90	
in particular in		Toral answer without 005. Plan 19 % VAT.		610.00 61.00	
				Checkout	

If your customer wants to register during the order process, an Express button can also be used:

I'm already a customer.	I'm a new customer		
Log in with your email address and password	1 aro*		
Your strait address	Salutation*	-	
Your persword			
Porgot your password?	First summer*		
Lagin >	Lett name*		
PayPat Contras	Don't create customer a	ICCOUNT	
	Your enail address*		
/ benefits	Your pertiver d*		
Express Shopping Silve your user data and settings Overview of your orders and, shipping arbitrations Manage your newsletter subscription	Your password must contail The password is case sensit		
	Your address		
	Street and number*		
	Zupatels*	Qy*	
	Deutschland	-	
	II The shipping address do	es out match the billing address	

Finally, the article itself can be ordered directly over PayPal by clicking on the express button on its detail page:



## **PayPal Plus**

The PayPal plug-in includes a direct integration of PayPal Plus: You can offer your customers the four most popular payment methods used by German consumers from one source. Besides the classic PayPal, your customers can choose between SEPA direct debit, credit card and pay upon invoice.

Please note that PayPal Plus is no longer available for new activations and that the purchase on account via PayPal Plus has been switched off for PSD2 legal reasons. This is, of course, possible with the successor **PayPal Checkout**.

### Requirements

The product "PayPal Plus" must be activated individually for each merchant. If you have not already done so, apply for the activation here.

Please note that you have to unlock the pay upon invoice separately as well. PayPal Plus is currently only available for retailers in Germany.

## Configuration

You can configure PayPal Plus in the plug-in settings in the tab PayPal Plus Integration. The following configuration options are available:

Activate PayPal Plus (1): Check the box to activate the PayPal Plus integration for your selected shop.

**Payment acquisition (2):** This is where you specify when the payment is collected - i.e. when it is completed.

**Restyle payment selection (3):** At this option you can determine whether you want the payment method selection to be in Shopware- or PayPal-typical design. This is explained in detail in the section **Appearance of the payment method selection**.

**Display other payments methods in iFrame (4):** If you activate this option, third-party payment methods are displayed in the Payment Wall iFrame. Select the payment methods you want to display there under **Configuration > Payment Methods > Free text fields > Display in PayPal Plus iFrame**.

**Payment method name (5):** Here you can enter a different payment method name for the frontend, if desired.

**Complete payment method description (6):** Here you can add the payment type description in the front end. The description is displayed in the payment type selection, for example, in the account under the payment type description.

				Select stop:	and shop	
Constitution Institution		Partie Dis service	group and a second	Darks Day March Street Street	retor	
Second se		No. of Concession, Name	The second se		and the second second	
PayPai Plus - the four most You can get PayPai Plus he						
you can gereen ware ware						
Activate PapPat Plus:	Addieade in Jerder to	enable the PayPol Plus integr	atter for the selected shop			
Paymord acquisition:	Complete payment more	idately (Sale)				
Restyle payment solociton:	Attvate this option	to restyle the payment assocts	ok.			
Display other payments methods	Autivate this option	to cleanly third party methods	in the payment wait Fran	6. C		
te Prane:						
Payment method name:	PayPal, doitt action or o	redit nerti				
Complete payment method description:		creatil part to possible without	PoyPat associated			
description:						

The payment methods purchase on account (PayPal Pay Upon Invoice Integration) and direct debit from PayPal can only be used by German customers. The condition for this is the entry of a **German delivery address**. Otherwise, only credit or debit card and PayPal payment methods are available.

### **Frontend view**

The order process can be carried out as usual if you want to use the payment options of PayPal Plus. PayPal, direct debit, credit card and pay upon invoice via iFrame are displayed in the payment method selection in the checkout. The prerequisite for this is that the customer has selected PayPal as the payment

#### method in his account.

			Next	1
Cha	nge payment me	thed		
*	PayPal, debit asivi	se ar credit card		
	PayPal	Peoples Peoples RepPer Steps socks you have account while anyong and based them tapes peoplected.		1
	X SEPA	Direct sent		
	VISA 👥	Court Card		
	120	Pag sportwood		
0	Paid in advance The goods are dete	wind directly upon recoupt of payment.		
0	Cash on delivery Uncluding 2.00 Euro	(TAV)		
0	trivalce Payment by inscise	Shopware provides automatic invisions for all customers on orders after the first, in order to avoid defaults on payment		
	SEPA SEPA direct didut.			

If the customer has already set PayPal as the active payment method, the iFrame is also displayed on the checkout confirmation page.

### Appearance of the payment method selection

As mentioned in the configuration section, the appearance of the PayPal Plus payment method selection in the PayPal plugin can be customized. More specifically, it is possible to apply the styling of the PayPal Plus payment method iFrame to the entire payment method selection. If you activate the setting **redesign payment method selection** (3), the payment method selection is displayed as follows:

		Next >
Change paymen	tmethod	
PayPal	Payful Feel her Feelfall Seals reads you fee account white paying and benefit how hour particular.	~
X SEM	Dred next	
VISA 👥	Creeff Cana	
100	Pay apple involve	
Paid in advance		
Cash or delivery		
1912526		
TEPS.		

If this option is active, a further configuration option is shown: **Show other payment types in the iFrame** (4).

If you choose this option, the standard payment methods available in Shopware, as well as third-party payment methods, can be within the iFrame of the PayPal Plus payment methods, if set up accordingly. To do this, you must check the **Display in PayPal Plus iFrame** box in the **Free text fields** tab of the desired payment methods under **Settings** > **Payment Methods**:

wailable payment nethods	Converse Country Sortharpe Statistical Press Red Solds	
$\Rightarrow$ SEP4 (6) $\Rightarrow$ Pad in advance (5) $\Rightarrow$ Instalments proved by PayPal (8) $\Rightarrow$ Casel (2) $\Rightarrow$ Casel on delivery (3) $\Rightarrow$ Invoke (4) $\Rightarrow$ PayPa((7)	Free text fields Display in PayPal Plan drawer Payment logs for iPrame:	0

#### In the frontend it looks like this:

		Mest
Change paymen	method	
PayPal	PayPal	~
	Pret here PayPar? Singly mode your fee account while paying and benefit ham by a particular.	
X SEM	Dred dent	
VISA 🌑	Crieff Cant	
-	Pay upot trivica	
Paid in advance		
Cash or delivery		
1912526		
TEPS.		

There are payment methods which require additional fields directly in the payment method selection (e.g. the data details for SEPA direct debit). In this case this payment method is not compatible with the setting **display other payment methods in iFrame**. If such a payment type is integrated into the iFrame, its additional fields are not displayed and payments are therefore no longer possible.

### Customizing the document template

If you offer PayPal Plus in your shop, the non standard footer is used, but the **PayPal\_Unified\_Instructions\_Footer**, which has to be adapted first.

O ant many O Terra when	C G Server 1 (1998)			
no O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O O	0/ 0/ 0/	Normal Parties Annual Parties Marries Marries Marries (Marries) Marries Marries Marries Annual (Marries) Marries Marries Annual (Marries)	The Mail Level In Level Terms 2. Terminan (+) (A) (+) (2) (0) (2) (2) (2) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4) (4	•

You can customize this under **Basic settings** > **Shop settings** > **PDF document creation**. Select the document **Invoice** and open the **element PayPal\_Unified\_Instructions\_Footer** on the right side in the area Elements via the drop down menu.

An editor will open, where you can customize the content of the footer.

The PayPal bank details are automatically added via the **PayPal\_Unified\_Instructions\_Content** element. Therefore no adjustment by you is necessary. Your customers will automatically receive the correct PayPal bank details after completing the order and when the invoice is sent.

		r €33.90 until 24.10.2020 to Pa	ayPo			
			yran.			
	Barik;	Deutsche Bank				
	BC.	1				
	(BAN:					
	Account holder:	PayPai Europe				
	Amount:	633.90				
	Reference:	And a second sec				
Why PayPal? PayPal is our partner	for processing invoice payments. PayPo payment instructions after	al has just transferred the amou r you have received and checker	nt to us d I your pur	irectly. You ( chase,	pay the amount to Pay	Pull according to
Silling and shipping address				Inform	nation	
ur john boe				Trania Selecte	number: 20005 ction number: id payment method: ng method: Mandard	
Product		Qui	ntity			5
Artikel mit Stand	ard-Konfigurator Full		,			(34
		Sum: Shipping costs				630
		Total amount:				01
		Tatal emparts without	e WATi			62
Damo Grebit - Strafue 3 - 1 Mr John Doe	00000 Musteratedt	M Si Fr Si Si Si Si Si Si Si Si Si Si Si Si Si	emo Gent ax Muster traße 3 0000 Must or: 01234 to@demo ww.demo ww.demo ustomer N rder No ate: 24.09	mann torstadt / 56789 / 56780 .de .de 4o : 020004 20006		
Page 1 of 1 Page 1 of 1 Pos. Art. No. Descr		Quantity	VAT G	ross price	Gross total:	
the second se	mit Standard-Konfigurator Full	1	19 %	€30.00	€30.00	
	ng costs	1	19 %	€3.90	63.90	
	ng costs	1	19 %	€3.90	€3.90	
2 Shipp		Total costs and			<b>678 49</b>	
2 Shipp		Total costs net.				
2 5нор		Total coals net Plus 19 % VAT: Total coals			628.49 (5.41 (53.90	

Selected shipping type. Standard delivery

Dano Grani Ina die Fuderung appen 5e im Rahme name bahreden Fuderung verbangentages en die TwyFel (Gurgen) 5 dr.1 et Cie, 5 C.A. abgehnten: Zahlengen mit schaltbeheinder Weikung Nomen nur an die Peyrlei (Europe) 5 dr.1 et Cie, 5 C.A. gelestet werden Mite Garweisen 5 de C33 00 tes 24 10 200 an Peyrlei



## **PayLater**

In the tab **PayLater** you can activate the banner for the installment payment. As soon as the banner is activated, the installment payment will be promoted via PayPal. This works only with your Live Client-ID (not with the Sandbox Client-ID). The banner will be displayed in different areas of the frontend, e.g. on the item detail page or in the shopping cart.

General settings PayPal Ex	press Checked inlagration	Paytater Pa	y Upon Invoice Integration	Advanced Cro
Offer PayPal installments	with 0% effective annua	l interest rate to	your customers. Find o	out more here
Installments banner:	Enable to advertise i	ristalments via PayF	Pal. Works only with a Live Cl	ient-ID
Show Pay later under PayPal Button:	Enable to show the F	PayPal PayLater bull	ion under the PayPal button.	
Show Pay Later under Express Button:	Enable to show the i	PayPal PayLater but	on under the PayPal Expres	s button.

In the Pay Later configuration, you can define where information about Pay Later should be offered in your store.

**Installments banner (1):** This banner is displayed in the standard Responsive Theme on the left side of the screen.

**Show Pay Later under PayPal Button (2):** If you activate this checkbox, the Pay Later button will be displayed below the PayPal button in the checkout.

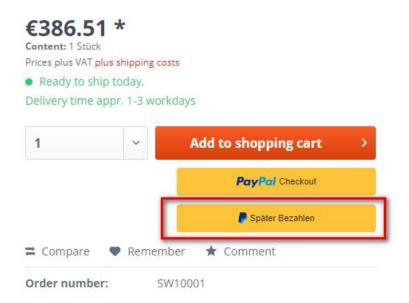
**Show Pay Later under Express Button (3):** If you activate this checkbox, the Pay Later button will be displayed below the PayPal Express button, for example on the product detail page.

Translated with www.DeepL.com/Translator (free version)

### **Frontend view**

It is necessary to accept the cookies of the "Technically Required" category in order to show the PayPal Installment banner. If the cookies were accepted in the past and PayPal Installment was activated later, the cookies must be accepted again so that the cookies for PayPal Installment are also set.

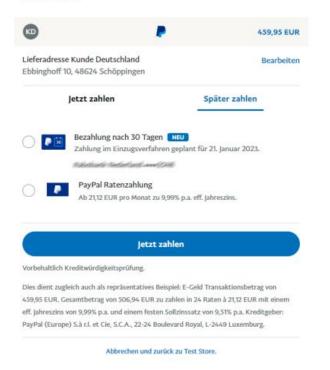
The display of the banner\* in the frontend, which can be clicked:



\*Please note that it's only available in German.

After clicking on the banner\*, the calculation of the rates is displayed\*:

Test Store



\*Please note that it's only available in German.

In order for your customers to be able to use the new installment payment in your shop, they must select the payment method PayPal in the checkout and log in with their PayPal account. Your customers can then check whether the payment method Installment Payment is displayed.

You can find further information about PayPal installment payment at PayPal.

## **PayPal Pay Upon Invoice Integration**

Please note that your PayPal account must be authorised for this payment method to be available to your customers. You can authorise your account in the PayPal settings module.

e integration	And a second sec	
	Destina the spectra standard Paper (April April A	page best to the republic data
loaking Boose	Ne aperent, un ni bissina.	•
loaderse Boone	Par wateries (set the definition)	

You can use this function to activate PayPal Pay Upon Invoice for your shop.

Please check under **Configuration > Payment methods** that the payment method for PayPal pay upon invoice with the name **SwagPaymentPayPalUnifiedPayUponInvoice** is active if you want to offer

purchase on account. Furthermore, under **Configuration > Shipping costs > Payment methods**, it is necessary to add the purchase on account as **Allowed** for all shipping methods for which the shop customer can pay by PayPal Pay Upon Invoice.

## **PayPal Advanced Credit Debit Card Integration**

Please note that your PayPal account must be authorised for this payment method to be available to your customers. You can authorise your account in the PayPal settings module.

wyPut - Settings			860
	beier stop:	wit, ins	1
COLUMN STATE	and a second	Certimoters	
Pai Advanced Condi Dalai Card	and the second se	- 117	
Automa for this shap-	Contents free system for sectionis PayPed Advances Contel Dated East for the strate		
Copilately and			

Here you can activate the advanced credit and debit card integration.

## **Frontend view**

			Next
	Char	inge payment method	
		PayPal	
,	0	Payupon	
	0	Giropay giro pay	
	0	sener 💥 Sofort.	
)	0	Credit	
	0	SEPA SEPA	

These two payment methods are now available in the frontend.

## **Tips and tricks**

### Hide "Direct to PayPal" button

If you would like to hide the PayPal Express button for certain items, you can do so with an individual solution. Here we show you a possible solution that you can implement in your shop.

This solution currently works up to and including version 2.6.5 of the PayPal extension.

Both the Bare Theme and the Responsive Theme are standard templates that should never be changed, as changes are overwritten during an update. Therefore you must always derive correctly in your own theme.

Make a **backup** before the execution, so that you can restore it if in doubt. Please note that these are adjustments of Shopware and therefore the content of this tutorial is **not officially supported**!

1. In the first step, you should create and assign a new theme, which inherits from the currently used theme in the Theme Manager.

In this example we derive the theme directly from the Responsive Theme and call it "overwritepaypal".

have Manager					800
elect Name for share		· Done here	@ Parta an Person		Q
					(anyone extensions)
		Cashi une Svide		(BG2)	The artity spinoled
		There take		-	
D Throughout the Micanowski B		Tablement of	Tenner		
Comparison in any second			Safed and Annual Loss of Control.	-	
The state of the second		Marter	peretanget		
Contraction of the	0 # 1 #				
	are Repairies	Mit Burghin.	inistanya	1	
			bit, but of April which Mittale Assage		
(Let	Returnstor	) and questions.			
		Autor			
		1000001			
				-	
				Carl Carl	
					Sale Sector
					C. C. Brackey Street, Co.
					and the second s

2. Then you create a new article free text field with the column type checkbox. Here we have named the article text field "disablepaypal".

A page range ball i second	and the second se								86
O sector Up	man in the second	the states	and one of the local data				THE PARTY SAMPLES		
	· Dates type	NOL NYP	1400	Section.	They is a second	Press.			
Configurent II True for	IN TANKING STATE						Colors seen	destroying of	
and the second s	Online	1999	(In contraction of	¥			Colory Berl	Chevillen, HP11	
and here see and	Classifier.	- 1871B							10
P1	There is a	1011	19984-11						10
4	(ingen bei	1917	fiabel.		-				
eð.	Stagen Intel	1847	tioners and a				Van Lorf (public)		
for Longord IV Iv	an loss I findenti						Lane .	Continued.	
ad I	Tager and			#1)	1				
we : :	Trippe have					1.1	Pagend herit		( + )
H4	Date the						(and the local of		*
-1	Support Sector								
H.	19444-101			*			Transien.		
w)	Tager but						Disaries in familiance	(2)	
100	Super her						Vanderig in American		
NTI .	Higgsr best								
×12 ;	Repriet .			*		1.0	Senne-		
with .	(httpp://www.								
111	Mappin Stati			A					
- FI	Support Sector			*5	(8)				
10	79447707								
w11	Tigged have								
	Super test								
19	Tigar Int								
10.	Magar Sol			· · · ·					
									11
ELECTRONIC ELECTRON	HTTP: 11. Q					Distance Lot of Lot			2044

3. Now edit the theme.php in your previously created theme (here under /themes/frontend/overwritepaypal) and write the following into it:

protected \$injectBeforePlugins = false;

It should look something like this:

```
class Theme extends \Shopware\Components\Theme
{
...
protected $injectBeforePlugins = false;
...
}
```

4. Then you create the file buy.tpl in the directory /frontend/detail of your previously created theme (in our example under /themes/frontend/overwritepaypal/frontend/detail/buy.tpl) with the following content

Then you have to empty the cache in the Cache Module. The PayPal button is now hidden for all articles or variants with the attribute "disablepaypal".

To make sure that the PayPal Express Button is also hidden in the Offcanvas shopping cart, you have to make further adjustments in your theme.

To do this, create the file ajax\_cart.tpl in the /frontend/checkout directory of your previously created theme with the following content:

To hide the button in the shopping cart, the file cart.tpl must be created in the same directory of your theme. Fill it with the following content:

```
{extends file="parent:frontend/checkout/cart.tpl"}
    {block name='frontend_checkout_cart_table_actions_paypal_unified_ec_button'}
    {foreach $sBasket.content as $item}
        {if $item.additional_details.disablepaypal}
        {assign var="disablepaypal" value="1"}
        {/if}
        {/foreach}
        {if $paypalUnifiedEcOffCanvasActive && $paypalUnifiedUseInContext !== null && !$disablepay
        {include file='frontend/paypal_unified/express_checkout/button_cart.tpl' paypalEcAjaxO
        {/block}
```

After making the changes you have to empty the cache in the Cache Module again.

#### Additional description from version 2.8.1

Under **Configuration > Payment Methods** you can add, edit, activate or deactivate the payment methods used in Shopware. More information about this option can be found here.

For PayPal there is an **additional description** for the frontend in the tab **General**, which contains Javascript with a link.

In version 2.8.1 we changed the text in the **additional description** for the PayPal payment method, because originally there was a JavaScript (for forwarding to PayPal) in it. Since this description text would be inserted by default in the order confirmation mail, this could lead to the fact that the confirmation mail was marked by some mail providers as spam/uncertainty and thus did not reach the end customer.

This JavaScript part has now been replaced in version 2.8.1 But to avoid overwriting your own texts, the text will remain when updating the plugin. Only if you completely reinstall the plugin, the new text will be used.

If you don't reinstall the plugin and simply run the update, you can also change the additional description manually. Add the following text to the additional description:

<!-- PayPal Logo --><a onclick="window.open(this.href, 'olcwhatispaypal','toolbar=no, location {link file='frontend/\_public/src/img/sidebar-paypal-generic.png' fullPath} " alt="Logo 'PayPal empfohlen'"></a><br><!-- PayPal Logo -->Bezahlung per PayPal - einfach, sc

### **Read invoice data**

If an invoice purchase is made through PayPal, the associated invoice data is stored in the table swag\_payment\_paypal\_unified\_payment\_instruction.

To make this information easier to read, it is also displayed in the backend. You can find it under Customers > Orders in the respective order details. There it is stored in the Communication tab in the Internal Communication field.

The JSON string looks something like this:

{"jsonDescription":"Pay Upon Invoice Payment Instructions","orderNumber":"20030","bankName":"D

# **Plugin: PayPal Express**

## **Paypal Express**

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

## Configuration

Contraction of the second s			
API username:			
API password:			
APt signature:			
	Get AP1 signature now		
REST-API client ID:		1	¢
REST-API secret:	The second se		
	Get REST API data now		
Activate sandbox mode:	Yes		
API timeout in seconds:		+	
Use CURL (If available):	Yes		
Ober CONE (IT available):	Test the APt now		
Display error messages:	No		
Alternative shop name for PayPal:			
Alternative language (locale):			
Shop logo for PayPal:		Select own files	
Cart color for PayPal:	#E1540P		
Show payment logo in frontend:	Yas		
Payment acquisition:	Complete payment immediately (ILaie)		
		1050	
Billing agreement / activate "Buy it now":	No		ľ
Transfer cart to PayPal:	Yes	*	6
Show express purchase button in basket:	Yas		
Show express purchase button on login page:	Yes.		
Show express purchase button in modalbox:	Yes	-	
Payment state after completing the transaction:	Completely paid		
Payment state after being authorized:	Raserved	-	
Transfer order number to PayPal:	No		¢

- API username: Enter your API username which you got from PayPal.
- **API password:** Enter your API password which you got from PayPal.
- **API signature:** Enter your API signature which you got from PayPal.
- **REST-API Client ID:** Enter your REST-API Client ID which you got from PayPal, this is necessary for PayPal Plus.
- **REST-API Secret:** Enter your REST-API Secret which you got from PayPal, this is necessary for PayPal Plus.
- Activate sandbox mode:' If you have a PayPal developer account, you can use this sandbox mode with dedicated API credentials. In the developer mode you got different test users for test purposes. If a real user wants to order with his real PayPal account, this will cause in an error.
- **API-Timeout in seconds:** This defines the API-Timeout in seconds, if the API doesn't respond, the Plugin will wait this time before the connection will be interrupted.
- Use Curl (if available): With this config you can let PayPal use Curl, if it's available on your server.
- **Display error messages:** This defines, wheather the PayPal plugin will display errors or not.
- Alternative shop name on PayPal's site: This defines an alternative name on the PayPal site. If you leave this config empty, your shop name will be used.
- Alternative language (LocaleCode): With this option you can set a deviant language for the PayPal site, if needed. If nothing is set here, your shop language is used.
- Shop image for PayPal: Here you can choose your shop logo for the PayPal site. Otherwise no image will be shown.
- Color of the basket on PayPal: Here you can define the color of the cart on the PayPal site.

- Show payment logo in frontend: This shows the PayPal logo in your Frontend.
- **Payment acquisition:** This setting defines, wheather you want to acquisit your transaction directly or collect later.
- Billing aggreement / Activate "Buy it now": To make ESD items or abonnements buyable per 1-Click, activate this setting. This option (Recurring billing) has to be activated for your PayPal account first!
- Transfer basket to PayPal: Transfers the cart to PayPal
- Show express-purchase button in basket: Shows the PayPal Express button in the cart.
- Show express-purchase button in modalbox: Shows the PayPal Express button in the modalbox.
- **Payment state after completing the transaction:** This payment state will be set after the transaction was finished.
- Payment state after being authorized: This payment state will be set after the transaction was authorized. This option can only work if you have the option "Billing aggreement / Activate "Buy it now"" active!
- **Transfer order number to PayPal:** Transafers the order number to PayPal. This is necessary for some commodities management software.
- Add shop prefix to the order number: If you use one PayPal account with more shops, you can avoid multiple order numbers by divorcing the shops by this prefix.

## **PayPal in subshops**

To be completely independent for subshops the configuration has different configuration tabs for each of your subshops or language shops. If you leave the entries empty, they will be inherited from the main shop. Yes/No settings can be inherited by "Inherit". Just enter the desired data in the depending shop.

If you don't want to use PayPal in your language shops, enter invalid API data into the language shops configuration to "break" the inheritation.

## PayPal Plus

### Introduction

• The product "PayPal PLUS" has to be activated for each merchant individual, if not yet happened, request the activation at: www.paypal.de/paypal-plus. PayPal PLUS is currently available for german customers only.

### Requirements

To use PayPal Plus, the following requirements have to be met:

- PayPal PLUS must be activated for your account. Please mind that you have to activate payment via invoice separately.
- The PayPal plugin is installed, configured and active.

The PayPal plugins REST-API Client ID and REST-API Secret must be entered! You get the these date from PayPal, you get a guideline in the attached PDF.

### Installation

The PayPal Plus Plugin is downloadable over the german Shopware store, because english is currently not supported.

## Configuration

The configuration can be made over the plugin settings in the plugin manager or in "Configuration > Basic settings > Payment methods > PayPal PLUS":

- **Countries where to display "PayPal PLUS":** This defines, in which countries PayPal PLUS will be displayed. **Notice**, that debit and invoice currently only work in germany!
- Hide payment method chooser in checkout (Shopware 4): This option defines, wheather the PayPal PLUS payment method chooser is displayed in the checkout of Shopware 4. If you set "No", your customer can change the PayPal PLUS payment method only in the account payment settings.
- **Overwrite payment method name:** Here you can define the name of the PayPal PLUS payment mean which your customer will see before he can choose between the PayPal payment methods.
- **Overwrite payment description:** Hereby you can overwrite the payment methods description.

### Configuration of the webhook

It's important to configure the webhook for PayPal PLUS to avoid problems with changing payment states e.g. a transaction is reserved first and has to get "done".

To configure this webhook, open <u>developer.paypal.com</u>, in "Dashboard" you'll find "My Apps and Credentials". If you choose your App from the "REST API Apps", you can find the webhooks there. To add a webhook, click "Add webhook".

As webhook a URL must be entered which has the following format:

- 'http://www.myShop.de/shop/payment\_paypal/webhook' or 'http://myShop.de/payment\_paypal/webhook'
- Its the base domain URL with shop path if needed.
- This URL corresponds the notify URL but with "webhook" at the end.

Configuring the "Event Types" you have to configure "All events" also.

### **Display in the frontend**

				 Next
Change p	syment method			
	el, Læstschrift oder	Rreditkarte		
	PayPal			
000	t avent	A NyNeservice Taxa	don't need a PayPar account.	7
Ctet	t Card			
Par	em theore			

The single payment means (PayPal, debit, credit card, invoice) will be displayed in an iFrame in the checkout and replace the Shopware integrated payment means. Reuirement for this is, that the customer chooses "PayPal" as payment mean.

The iFrame also has the logic, that if the user still has "PayPal" selected, it will show itself also in "step 3" of the checkout.

Terms, conditions and cancellation	n policy		
Financiality outsi and cancellation policy			
There read and accepted the <u>Desce of t</u>	term and coldinary of poor deat.		
Billing address	Shipping address	Payment and	dispatch
INTELL Nav Mailumates	W100 Mar. Mutermain	Fagment meth	of.
Numeroralis 12	Bikamir vermlar. 12		Pt policy knocklikarite:
12345 Murrerssell: Desitschiand	12345 Mannestandi Deservativent		and almost parts by data or unsets
	al line for future orders.	cane state	
		and-back close	
Charge address	Change address:		
er une analitest address?	er en mothel adress	(march)	
and the second sec		Change	
PoyPul New			
VISA Constant			
N WIT Disatored			
VISA Constant	Quantity	Included VAT:	Sum
VISA Constant VISA Constant Predact Predact			
VIEN Drest and VIEN Dest East Annual Pre-same reserve Methant	Quantity:	Included VAD: COL46	Sum cosm 2
VISA Derawi VISA Derawi Records Record			
VISA Contractor VISA Contractor Internet Products Product Response for the sector Contractor of the sector of the			
VISA Derawi VISA Derawi Records Record	ter men format term	672.44	6488.00 3 6207.00 <sup>2</sup>
VISA © Dereseri VISA © Dereseri Reservers Protect Response beland Deres route beland Deres route beland Deres route beland Deres route beland Deres route beland	ter met formet	(51.44 1	eessaa (3

### How can I test?

In the sandbox mode you can test with your test credentials, which can be added at <a href="https://developer.paypal.com/">https://developer.paypal.com/</a>. The easiest way to test this is in the ELV mode, for this you need a real bank code and a random 8 character bank account number.

Sandbox transactions will be concluded in a test environment, no real bank account will be used. But note, that the test environment may not as stable as the productive environment.

## **FAQ** - error codes

## 10004

### Transaction refused because of an invalid argument. The transaction id is not valid

The in-payment could not be confirmed by PayPal, the user has made the payment in his PayPal account, but this could not be verified by PayPal. This may be a technical problem, but can also be a real transaction problem e.g. if the customers bank account or credit card is not flushed.

For Shopware this transaction is not made, in this case an invalid transaction ID (Express checkout token) will be assigned, which starts with **EC-**. You can find it in **Customers->Payments->PayPal**. Because the payment is not completed, the payment state will be **Open**, in such cases, you should check the in-payment in your PayPal account.

After finishing the order and getting back to Shopware the customer will see a message, that problem occured with this transaction and PayPal could not assign a valid transaction ID. The user will see the following message: "An error has occurred and the order could not be finished."

If this behavior is not desired and you don't want to get invalid PayPal orders, deactivate the config option "*Transfer order number to PayPal*", with this configuration, the user gets back into the Shopware checkout process and is requested to choose another payment method.

At invalid transaction IDs we recommend to check the **API timeout** first, by default this is set to 60 seconds, if you set it much lower, increase the value gradually until 120-160 seconds. Also deactivate **Transfer order numbers to PayPaI**.

### **Authentication / Authorization Failed**

The API credentials are incorrect.

### 10002

#### Security error. Security header ist not valid

The API key is incorrect.

### **Duplicate invoice**

#### Payment has already been made for this InvoiceID

The order number range is too small, the order numers are still assigned in PayPal.

## **Shipping Adress State Empty**

### The field "Shipping Adress State" is required

States are not configured, the following countries requires states:

- USA (US)
- Canada (CA)
- (Mainland) China (CN)
- Japan (JP)
- Mexico (MX)
- Brasil (BR)

How to configure the states you can find in our country settings in the basic configuration.

## Invalid transacionID. Transaction id is invalid

The config option "Only authorioze payments" is active, but not active for your merchant PayPal account.

## Express Checkout PayerID is missing

The option "**Billing aggreement**" is active but your merchant Account is not activated for this feature.

### **Error in cURL request**

### Operation timed out after 5000 milliseconds with 0 bytes received

This error happens, when the PHP configuration doesn't have a valid set *curlopti\_timeout*.

## List of all PayPal error codes

You can find a list of all PayPal error codes at the PayPal developers site. These codes were displayed over the PayPal plugin in the backend of Shopware. Please note, that these error codes are PayPal error codes, which are disowned by Showpare.

## PayPal Plus: Access not allowed

This message appears always, when the used PayPal PLUS account is not yet enabled for the live environment.

### Don't use PayPal in language-/ subshops

As other plugins too PayPal inherits his settings from the main shop to the language & subshops if no configuration is entered. To disable PayPal in Subshops, just enter invalid API credentials, so that the fallback will be interrupted.

# **Plugin: Shopping Advisor**

The biggest gap between the brick-and-mortar store and online retail is often the still missing "advisory" approach". You can close this gap ideally with our premium plugin "Shopping Advisor".

"Shopping Advisor" is the new version of our Q & A Search Assistant and was completely refurbished. These are the plugins highlights:

- Responsive Design
- Product Stream Integration
- Seamless integration in the Shopware backend
- Visual design grid for step by step advisors
- backend preview for the result listing

## Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

## Interface

You can find the Shopping Advisor after the installation under **Marketing > Shopping Advisor**. If the menu item is not there, reload the backend once.

After opening the plugin you will see the following overview:

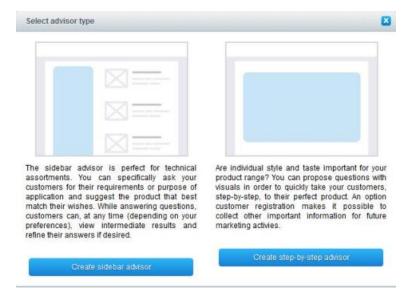
shoppe	ng Advisor			896
O Add	tem 🔅 Delete al selected 👩		Q Search	
Nam		Mode	Active	
Slep	by step advisor	Step-by-step mode	-	0/0
udeb	ar advisor	Sidebar mode	1	0/0

When you open the module, an overview of all currently created advisors is displayed. When you open the module for the first time, this list is empty. Accordingly, you have the possibility to **add a new advisor (1)** or to **delete existing advisors (2)**.

## Creating and editing an advisor

## **Advisor types**

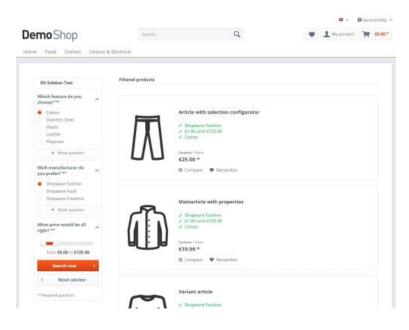
The plugin provides two different concepts, which you can use to create your advisor. After clicking "Add item" you have to decide between "Sidebar advisor" and "Step-by-Step Advisor":



#### Sidebar advisor

The sidebar advisor is the known concept, you may know from other online shops. Ideal for, e.g. technical product ranges, you are able to ask for specific requirements and show results on the fly to your

customers. This way your customers can specify their results in regard of their needs. The questions or filters used in the advisor will be shown on the left side of your shop, the results will be displayed on the right. In the frontend it will look like this:



#### Step-by-step advisor

The step-by-step advisor finds its results in single steps, based on a visual supported display of the questions. Instead of simple questions it is possible to use emotional pictures. In the frontend it works this way: First your customer can answer question after question or jump between different questions. Each question will have an own page, at the end your customers will see a result page based on their choices.

emo Shop	seenti. Q	🗣 上 My account 🎽 🚥 🛛
ime Food Oothes Unsure & B	lectrical	
Test Wisard		
	1/3	
Which feature do you like?		
	cutter	
	titainiess Steel	
	Plastic	
	Polyester	
	Laather	
6 Reset advisor	Gido-to taxettim v	Next question 3
		and the second

### **Basic settings**

When you create a new advisor and already chose an advisor type, the following menu will open. This is parted in the tabs "Basic settings", "Stream selection", "Questions" and "Result configuration".

O Nome:		
Description:	⑦ ○ B I U Fort Size + ▲ + 田田 臣 首 副 Ø 賞 働 ○ ♪	
	Path p	
Diamer.	Select methy	0
	Result metha	
Active:		
Unk URL	0	Capy 0

In the basic settings you may cconfigure the following data:

- **Name (1)**: Here you enter the name of the advisor, the name will also be used for the advisor's link.
- **Description (2)**: This description will be shown at the start of the advisor.
- **Banner (3)**: Here you may set a banner which will also be displayed at the beginning of the advisor.
- Active (4): This option activates or deactivates the advisor.
- Link URL (5): Using this link you can reach the advisor. At this place you can see and copy the url, after you saved the advisor for the first time.

All changes in the tabs of this module can be saved using the "Save" button or drop them using the "Cancel" button.

Before you can save the advisor, you have to configure additional options in the tabs "Stream selection" and "Result configuration"

### **Stream selection**

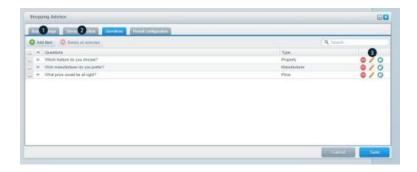
The results shown in the plugin "Shopping Advisor" are based on Product Streams, which were introduced in Shopware 5.1. They provide the base selection of products available in the advisor. Product streams ensure, that your advisor will stay up to date, without taking care of each and every advisor manually. The only thing required are well maintained products. So here it is possible to select a product stream, which provides the advisor's base.

	Streen wireben Diette	and the second			 		
Create a new	Product Streem						
Select ex	stating Product Stream						
Product St							
	1.00						
TEVYOW							
Shop:	Screeting etce		Customer group:	Default	Currenzy:	EOB	
Number	Nama					Baak	Price
0							
,							

For this you select one of the streams at "product stream" (1), which you want to use for the advisor. If you did not already create the desired product stream (2), you may do so clicking "Create a new product stream". After you selected the desired product stream, the included items (3) will be shown in the preview

### Questions

This is the advisors centerpiece, the questions. This is where the actual advising of the customer happens. If you already created questions these will be shown in the overview.



Following the concept already seen in the advisor overview, you may add questions using the button "Add item" (1), or delete existing questions using "Delete all selected" (2). Additionally existing questions can be deleted, edited or duplicated using the icons (3). The order of the questions can be manipulated via drag-and drop.

#### **Create questions**

When you create a new question or edit an existing one, the following module will open.

Question			
O Your question:			
2 Information last:	⑦ ◎ B I Ⅱ FortSte • ▲ • 毎日 目目目 ● Ⅱ 個 ○ ↓		
	Puttop		
Weight of the question:	1	\$	0
Question needs to be answered.			
Excluding question:			
Expand question:			
Allow multiple answers:			
O Annese Septemb		-	0
О Туря:		٠	0

In the module you can configure your questions:

- Your question (1): Place the question you want to ask your customer
- **Information text (2)**: Here you can add additional information the customer will see with the question
- Weight of the questions (3): You can set the weight of the question. Using this the relevance of the answers in the frontend will be increased and matching articles will be displayed earlier. A higher weight leads to a higher position for fitting products.
- **Question needs to be answered (4)**: Questions with this option are required to be answered by the customer, so the advisor can be finished.
- **Excluding question (5)**: You can define excluding questions here. This means, that after answering this question, only articles will be shown, which match the question, other articles won't be shown.
- **Expand question (6)**: This option is only used in the sidebar advisor and manages, if the question is expanded at the start or not.
- Allow multiple answers (7): This option alows the customer to give multiple answers to one question.
- **Answer layout (8)**: Here you are able to define, how the answers will look in the frontend. The different option will be explained in detail later on.
- **Type (9)**: This gives the option to select the type of your question. It defines the areas regarding the question and automatically influences the answers you may create. Further details will be explained in the segment "Question types".

#### **Question types**

There are four given options you may use to define the type of your question:

- **Attribute**: The answers will be selected from the items attributes. The attribute you want to add needs to be filterable. You can find this setting under **Properties** > **groups** > **filterable**.
- **Property**: For this type you can select the answers from the properties available in your shop.
- **Manufacturer**: Here you can use the manufacturers available in your shop.

• **Price**: Here you can define answers regarding the price of the items.

#### Questions regarding attributes, properties or manufacturers

When you create questions of this type, a drop down will appear, where you can define the actual option, e.g. which property shall be used. Based on this you can select the answers, you want to use in the advisor.

Type	Property		- 0
Show all:			
voperties:	Size (02 #1)		
Answers.			
Possible answers:			- 0
- Value	Anyons	CSS-date	
π: <u>λ</u>	Large		00
# M	Medium		
- 5	Small		00
# XL	Edularge		

By clicking on the desired answer, it is entered in the "Answers" area. Here you can assign a different text or a CSS class to it if you wish, or also adjust the order of the answers with Drag & Drop.

The selection of answers depends on the articles and available values in your product stream.

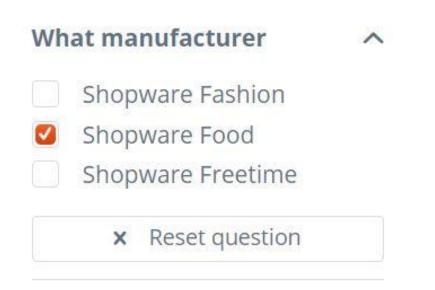
#### **Price questions**

When creating a price question you may select one of the known answer layouts or a price slider. In the first case you may define values as you wish, for the price slider you define minimal and maximal values.

#### Answer layout

Here you can customize the appearance of your response options in the frontend. The thumbnail view gives you a first impression of how these options differ from each other.

The first option is the "Single selection - Text". With this selection, only one answer can be specified at a time. In the frontend, these questions appear to the customer as follows:

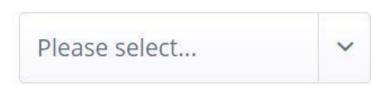


This display form is also available for a multiple selection as "multi selection - Text". The look only differs a bit.



The option "single selection - drop down" is only available for sidebar advisors without multi selection. In the frontend questions with this layout will be displayed this way:

# What manufacturer



Additionally you can use a price slider, which looks like this:



#### Image supported questions - Step-by-step advisor

When you create a Step-by-Step advisor, you got the possibility to use another answer layout: "Single selection - Image" provides the option to use a design grid to include emotional image worlds within your advisor.

You got the option to add an image for each answer (3), additionally you can configure, whenever the answer text is shown or not (1).

0.0202000000000	1.			-
Weight of the question:	12		(*)	0
Question needs to be answered:	0			
Excluding question:				
Allow melliple answers:	0			
America Angela	Single animitan - Intage			0
Types	Property		-	0
Hide answer text.				
Properties:	Maturial (ID #2)			¥.
Annuara				
Ponetble annours:	£		- 0	
				4
= Volue	Annuar FLeather	CSS class Meage	0	
= (axter	Leather	Class (s. set)	0 ·0 @	î
= Plantic	Platte		0 × 0	
= Polyester	* Polyester	Cost in Life		
= Stanium Steel	* Station Stat		<b>0</b> % <b>0</b>	
⊯ Colton	*Cation		0 <del>0</del> 0	

With the button "Fill grid" (2) you open the editor, which you can use to alter the layout of the answers.

Description This is the description	ete Marcae dago metrikak antoen her	the part and all at the designer grat, state, when	
(manual data and the second se			
Provide anywery			- 0
- Here	Anner Norther	100 thes invite	
2 - Paste	* <sub>Plants</sub>		0.0
- 1 Papala	*reade		0.0
1. Name that	* Freehalt Shar		9 40
1 case	*1.000		0 40

On the left site of the editor you see the layout grid, here you got the chance to alter the grid regarding the following options:

- Add row (1): Adds a row to the grid.
- **Remove row (2)**: Removes a row from the grid.
- Number of columns (3): Sets the number of columns in the grid.
- Image height in px (4): Defines the height of images in the grid.

You can easily assign your answers to this grid. You can find these answers in the overview on the right side, from where the answers can be assigned to the grid using drag & drop. If you don't like the order of the answers in the grid, you can also move already assigned answers again. You can also add new answers or edit existing ones in the usual way using the overview of answers available here.

In your frontend the question will look like this, chosen answers will be marked with a check mark.

÷1	23	н	'nń	 e	d-	T	**	ż

2/3

#### Which manufacturer do you prefer?

Lorem grum dolor sit amet, consetour subgroung ellst, sod skam nanuny eirmod tempor inviture ut latore et dolore magna alrayam erat, sod diam voluptua. At vero eos et alcosam et yaro dou doloreix era eroum. Ster tala kad globergrein, voi au talannas anctus est Lorem tourn dolor sit amet. Lorem tourn dolor sit amet, consetour sadpochig mitr, ad duam normung vernod immojn inviturus tal lober doute magna aleguyam erat, sod duam voluptua. At vero eos et accusam of justo dua doloreis et a rebum. Ster cita kaud gubergrein, no sea talamaza sanctus est Linem ipsum dotor sit amet.

Stitue Stitue	BEACHDREAMS	SASSE
Sport	22 sunnenschim/Versauf	STOP DE UASTR MEE 1/2006 FEI
6 Bock 6 Reset advisor		Skip to question > Next question >

## **Result configuration**

The result listing at the end of the advisor can be altered in the tab "Result configuration":

Listing title filtered:		Omformation link text.			0
Title for remaining products:		😧 🔕 Search button text:		۲	0
Product layout	Dataled information	Minimum amount of answers	0	0	0
Highlight top hit:		😡 🔕 Saršing:	Lowest price Tryl	-	0
Top hit title:		0			

You got the possibility to alter the layout and texts of this listing.

- Listing title filtered (1): Here you can specify how the title for the product listing should look like after filtering.
- Title for remaining products (2): This sets the title for products without hits.
- **Product layout (3)**: This alters the listing layout, further information can be found in the segment "result listing".
- Highlight top hit (4): Highlights the highest rated hit.
- **Top hit title (5)**: Specific title for the top hit.
- **Information link text (6)**: Defines the text for the information link. This link shows the description of a question in a sidebar advisor.

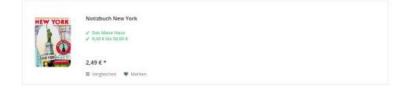
- Search button text (7): Defines the text for the search button.
- minimum amount of answers (8): Amount of answers, which is needed to show a result
- **Sorting (9)**: Sets the sorting which is used as a third factor after hits and weight of questions.

If you define no texts, default texts will be used.

If you use the premium plugin "Advanced Promotion Suite", you have to consider the following: Discounts from this plugin will not be considered in "Shopping Advisor". It may occure, that the sorting of hits will not be displayed correctly.

#### **Result layout**

Under "Product Layout" you can choose between different layouts. Each representation contains a small graphic of the item and a short explanation of the layout. The layout **show matches** shows the matching properties in the result listing.



If you select the **show all** layout, the listing will show all the information, i.e. the matching properties as well as the others.



The following three product layout options are the default layouts of the listings that you know from the categories. However, no additional hits are displayed here.

#### Layout **Detailed information**



Layout Only important information



#### Layout Big image



#### Preview

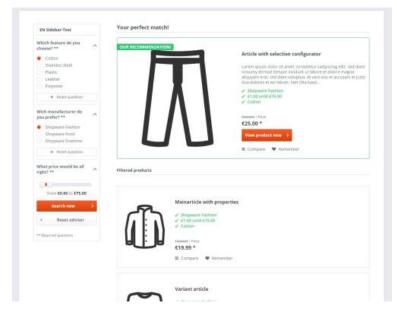
In the preview you can check your advisor, including results and their sorting. For this you can answer the questions on the left side and after a click on "Show products" the results will be displayed.

Part of a region of a region     Lage     Normality     Normality     Normality     Normality     Normality       Based address     Research of the second of the seco	- 200		erall press	
Annumber         Annumber         1           Annumber         Annumber         1           Margin de lange de lange         1         1           Margin	CE NU IN IN INVIA	C man	gree Printen Ne protecte ent positio	-
Minimizer and Diamana in Procession in Procesion in Procession in Procession in Procession in Proces			Television and the second seco	9 1 1
			Main product with revenues	8 8 9
				4
		The pairs		

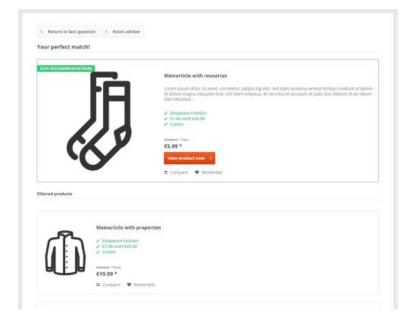
#### **Result listing in the frontend**

The configured result listing will be displayed to the customer like this.

Sidebar advisor



#### Step-by-step advisor



# Forwarding of an advisor and storage with registered customers

The plugin "Shopping Advisor" saves the advisors of your customers in the shop. Accordingly, a registered customer can benefit from the fact that his advisor, including his results, is saved in a user. He can therefore call up an advisor again at a later point in time via the link.

Even if a customer is not logged in, his advisor can be called up again later via an alphanumeric value attached to the advisor's link. So the customer can pass on his advisor with his own answers via the link to a friend, for example, who can then see the answers and add them if necessary.

# **Plugin: Ticket system**

The "Ticket System" plugin lets you manage all communication with your customers centrally in the Shopware backend. All customer enquiries can be listed in a single ticket overview. In this way, communication with your customers remains clear and efficient. In this documentation, we will explain to you how to successfully install and configure this plugin.

### Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to **Configuration** > **Plugin manager** > **My purchases**. You need to login and click the **refresh** button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under **Settings** > **Cache/Performance** > **Clear Shop Cache** and refresh the backend.

### Configuration

After installing the plugin, you can configure it in the plugin configuration in the Plugin Manager or under **Settings > Basic settings > Adittional settings > Ticket system**.

Description		
customer base can quickly become overv	ind level of success with your online shop, communical heiming. One way to manage this information is though m for all customer communication and saves you valua r.	the Ticket System. This
Something else Gewoon maair zu Ein	ach anders Second	
Send ticket confirmation to the customer:	Na	-
Notification of new / unanswered tickets:	No	
Account - Ticket form ID:		
Allow file uploads:	Yes	
File upload size (in KB):	6000	\$

- Send ticket confirmation to the customer Sends a confirmation of receipt to the customer.
- Notification of new / unanswered tickets If you as a shop operator want to receive a status email as soon as there is an answer to a ticket or a new ticket, this check mark should be set.
- **My Account ticket form ID** This setting defines which form should be called up when the customer clicks on "Support Request" in their account.
- Allow file uploads Determines whether the client may upload files
- File upload size (in KB) With this setting you define the maximum upload file size in KB, e.g. 1024 (1MB) or 2048 (2MB). Please note that 0 does not stand for "unlimited".

When using the ticket system, please make sure that you provide the existing forms in your system with a so-called mapping so that the forms are also displayed correctly.

### Interface

The plugin window is basically divided into the two tabs **Overview (1)** and **Settings (2)**.

new ticket	Chiefe matketi	Status:	Paper telect.		+ Employee:	Peace sett.		Q. 5mm	
 Cleaned	Latro		Туре	150	Status	Culture	Company	Employee	Action(s)

#### Overview

In the "Overview" tab, the customer requests are listed in a structured way.

O Chatter	Service .		-			100			
1000	www.hchold	e marked \$1atos:	14		· Employee:	Phone labor .		Q front	
1. 1	Created	Last coreact	Type	1950	Steps	Cuetoriae	Contony	Employee	Action(s)
1 1 12	19.10.2021 08:45	19.10.2221 08:45	Support-Ticket	de	Open	Tanany Clark		No assignment	2 8/0
e <b>2</b> 41	19 10 2021 06 28	19 10.2021 08.26	Support-Telket	the	Oper	Terry Claib		No assignment	2 8 / 6
4 4 19	or 1 of 1 >	NIO							Displaying 1 - 2 of
4 4 Pa	ge 1 dit >	<b>н (0</b> )							Deplaying 1 - 2 of
cial informa Subject: BS Mensage	non								
dad informa iubject: BS (essays	ton								

- **Create new ticket:** Gives you the option to create a new ticket for a customer in the ticket system.
- **Delete selected:** Selected requests can be deleted from the system using this button.
- Status (pulldown): Filters the view according to a desired status
- Staff (pulldown): Filters the view according to a staff member
- **Search:** In the case of a search query, all relevant fields are searched here.

In the "Action(s)" area you have the possibility to use some functions for a selected ticket. The four functions offered are explained below:

- **Open customer account:** With a click on the customer symbol you can open the customer account of the customer who has made the enquiry
- **Print ticket:** Using the document icon, a PDF can be created from the selected ticket.

- **Edit ticket:** You can edit the selected ticket by clicking on the pencil icon: The ticket is then opened in the corresponding detailed view.
- Delete ticket: The selected ticket can be deleted by clicking on the delete icon.

By double-clicking on a line, the respective status of a ticket can be updated from the overview and also assigned to a staff member. In addition, the lower view in the window can be folded out and you can directly view the respective ticket from the overview.

### Variables

Since version 2.1.1 of the plug-in Ticket System, it is possible to access global variables here as well in order to use them in the communication with the customer. These global variables correspond to those that are already available in the e-mail templates module. Included and available are, among others:

#### Shop

```
sShop: {$sShop|print_r} sShopURL: {$sShopURL}
```

#### Ticket

```
sTicket.id: {$sTicket.id}
sTicket.employee {$sTicket.employee}
sTicket.originalDate: {$sTicket.originalDate}
sTicket.originalMessage: {$sTicket.originalMessage}
sTicket.lastAnswerDate: {$sTicket.originalMessage}
sTicket.lastAnswerDate: {$sTicket.lastAnswerDate}
sTicket.lastAnswerMessage: {$sTicket.lastAnswerSubject}
sTicket.lastAnswerMessage: {$sTicket.lastAnswerMessage}
sTicket.historyCount: {$sTicket.lastAnswerMessage}
sTicket.type.id: {$sTicket.historyCount}
sTicket.type.gridColor: {$sTicket.type.gridColor}
sTicket.status.id: {$sTicket.type.name}
sTicket.status.id: {$sTicket.status.id}
sTicket.status.closed: {$sTicket.status.closed}
sTicket.status.color: {$sTicket.status.closed}
sTicket.status.description: {$sTicket.status.description}
sTicket.status.responsible: {$sTicket.status.responsible}
```

#### Customer

```
sCustomer.salutation: {$sCustomer.salutation}
sCustomer.firstName: {$sCustomer.firstName}
sCustomer.lastName: {$sCustomer.lastName}
sCustomer.mail: {$sCustomer.mail}
sCustomer.street: {$sCustomer.street}
sCustomer.zip: {$sCustomer.zip}
sCustomer.city: {$sCustomer.city}
sCustomer.customerNumber: {$sCustomer.customerNumber}
```

#### Additional

```
sAdditionalData: {$sAdditionalData|var_dump}
```

#### E-Mail-HTML

Please note: No "\$" is needed in the syntax of the following two variables.

```
E-Mail-Header: {emailheader}
E-Mail-Footer: {emailfooter}
```

### Edit ticket

In the detailed view, the actual processing of the request is carried out and the answer is sent. In the upper part you will find the actual message.

Subject	828	
Aessage:	Dear Sapport,	
	How do I sign up?	
	How do I sign up?	
Other fields		
Name:	John Dor	

In the middle part, you can define the relevant settings and the response. You can use templates there and also specify how this answer is to be sent. Here, the answer can be sent through the ticket system or, alternatively, the customer can receive the answer directly as an email to their mailbox.

implayee.	No assignment
ocele:	Screeting etco
imail notification.	Dixet's send email to customer
type of support:	Visithe support management     Orecity as an elikal to the customer
Customer eMail address	jutis diselijskopera con
De:	[pinndl==@ownpi.com
oad template:	Passa sate:
Solus after answering:	Planar inhet.
our sender address:	refregenzerpis con: Your sender name: Max Madermann
lubject:	Antword zuritnenn Tickell (sTickeld2)
Nessage:	⑦ ○ B 7 Ⅱ FortSao. + ▲ · 田田 田 田 田 田 田 田 田 田 日
	Default senglete for teket («TicketD)
	Part p
Attachmenta:	Seed allationets

#### Staff

In this field you can assign the ticket to a staff member.

#### Shop

You can select a shop here if you want to work with shop-specific templates. This setting serves as a filter so that under "Load template" you can only select the templates for the shop.

#### **Email notification**

If you tick this box, the ticket creator will not be sent any notifications regarding their request.

#### Support method

#### support managment

With this support method, the ticket creator only receives a notification that an answer to their ticket is available. Registered customers receive the content of the email template "Customer notification registered" with the indication that a reply is available in their "My account" area in the support administration. For unregistered users, the e-mail template is "Customer notification - unregistered". This template sends a URL where the complete ticket history can be viewed and the customer can reply.

If you use "Order without customer account" in the shop, you should always send the correct template to your customer, otherwise quick orderers (customers without customer account) will not be able to see the answer, as it is only available in the account. Here you should either always use the correct template, or add a direct link to your template, which your customer can also view without logging in. The variable for this is: **{sTicketDirectUrl}** 

#### • Directly as an email to the customer

You can choose this support method to send your answer directly to the customer by email. This is especially helpful if you have customers without a customer account in the shop who cannot access the account.

#### **Customer email address**

This field is pre-filled with the customer email address. The optional status email also goes to this address.

#### Сс

If you want to send the answer to a mailbox in CC, you can enter the corresponding email address here.

#### Load template

All available templates or, if filtered, templates available for the shop are listed here. If a template is selected in the pulldown, it is loaded directly into the editor. If you have already prepared an answer in the editor, this content will be lost.

#### Status after answer

Here you can decide what status the enquiry has after it has been sent. For example, enquiries can be closed directly after processing so that the customer can no longer respond to the enquiry.

#### Your sender address / name

At this point, the displayed sender name and the email address used can be specified.

#### Subject / Message

Here you can enter both a subject for the answer and the answer itself.

#### Attachments

In this section, you have access to the media management in Shopware and can add attachments to your answer there. The recipient can access these attachments in the support history and download them.

In the frontend you can also offer the customer the option of attaching uploads to a request. To do this, the desired form must be equipped with an additional field under "**Contents > Forms**", which has the type " **Upload**". There, in the column "Options", further file extensions can optionally be excluded for an upload. Example specification: bmp;png

#### Support ticket attachments and ticket history

Here you can view the previous ticket history. If uploads have also been made in the ticket history, you can also access each file at this point.

cheit support allachmente			
Bachment			
ckel herory			
Doto	Sender	Subject	vitachments

### Settings

In the tab "Settings", the settings regarding the ticket system can be adjusted.

#### **Email templates**

In this area you can adapt the existing templates according to your wishes and also create further templates so that you can work optimally with the ticket system.

Terration Familiary State		97			
Available template(s)	Caselor 7 edit templata				
Something else	From address:	vito@sovariple.com	From name:	My sender name	
(5) Customer notification - registered		Tradition day com	From Harry.	The second second	
(S) Customer notification - unregistered	Subject:	A feast response is available	6 C.		
(S) Default template		Nettration - Assessment Tick			
RMA detect - rejected	Internal description:	Houseauon - Aswannid Tick	4		
RIVA Return Policy - accepted	HTML eMail:	Bond the olvial as an h	ITAK. (AAA)		
RMA defect - accepted	Locele:	A DOMESTICS I			
RMA Return Policy - rejected	Locele.	Something also			
(S) Nutrication - New Ticket	Planted Hittle to				
(S) Nutricebon - Amounted Tasket	and the second se				
	1 There is a rep	bill the city strates for the			
(5) Codimeter - Calorner	a., shere as a re	ay na car carao, proces			

#### Form mapping

Mapping is mandatory so that the fields of the forms can be written into the corresponding database fields. Without mapping, the system will not be able to assign the individual fields.

Control         Control         Control           Address formation         Basic settings         Address formation           Constat         Tasket Syme         Signet Tasket Syme           Defection product         Tasket Syme         Signet Tasket Syme           Defection product         Tasket Syme         Signet Tasket Syme           Defection product         Tasket Syme         Signet Tasket Syme           Nation from         Tasket Syme         Respection           Private From         Tasket Syme         Respection           Respection Symme         Tasket Symme         Respection           Respection Symme         Tasket Symme         Respection           Respection Symme         Tasket Symme         Respection           Respection Symme         Respection Symme         Respection Symme	Ticket system			80
Nameda Stromoto Basic Settings Writings Forwars Contail Contai	Comote Stdags			
Arthge-Forwair Contact	Tergantes Form Mopping	contligues Strip Specific image	addit (	
Context         Tecket type:         Support. Final           Detective product	Wallebio koms(s)	Besic settings		
becker produkt     becker p	Anthage-Formular			
Dobasis         Mapping configuration           Typey/stm:         Ticket message:           Knownstern         Ticket maker:           Nation form         Ticket maker:           Dobasis         Ticket maker:	Donised		Support-Tickut	
rapara kara Santa fan Santa fan Sant	Delective product			
Kontaffrendat Deket message Kontaffrendat Satial fon Satial fon Ticket subject Dehmt Robert bagont Ticket subject Ticket subje	Johatos Preduit	Mepping config	uration	
Nartisar form Tecket webject: Debrift Debrift Sector August Sector Augus	inquiry form:			
Tricket subject:         Distant           locket/seport         Ticket adher:           bitant         Allow           lickygen         Ticket adher:	Kontaktformular	Ticket message:	Kommordar	
Valorationale Nationale National Nation	Nation form	Triad autolant	(naur	-
Ndam Nadapite Ticket eMail: [cf.tal	Partnenformaler	treate and see		
Radigudes Tester eMail: etcal	Request support	Ticket author:	Páirtei	×
langee	Netam			
Save map	Räckgebe	TERME MAIL	otoal	•
				Save mapping

Select the respective form from the left view and assign it to the respective available fields on the right side. Further fields from the forms that cannot be assigned are displayed as further additional fields in the ticket details.

#### Ticket type

In this item, you can create different ticket types and also assign them by colour. This allows you to categorise the tickets and thus obtain an optimal overview of all tickets in the ticket overview. The respective ticket type can be assigned under the form "Mapping".

#### Shop specific template(s)

Under this item, separate email templates can be defined for additional shops. In addition, it is possible to duplicate an existing email templates so that they can be adapted for another shop and thus serve as a template.

When writing a reply to a ticket, you can select the shop and then access the email templates filtered by shop in the following pull-down menu.

### Widget

The ticket system also provides a widget that makes it easy to get an overview of the current tickets. More information about the widgets.

# **Plugin: VAT ID-validation**

With this interface we allow you to validate VAT-IDs from intern and abroad countries. With the previous interface of the Federal Central Tax Office it was not possible to validate VAT-IDs from Germany. Additionally a request was only possible if you yourself had a valid German VAT-ID. To also allow international customers to validate the correctness of VAT-IDs we have created this new Plugin based on the European interface. Further information about this interface you can be found here: VIES VAT number validation

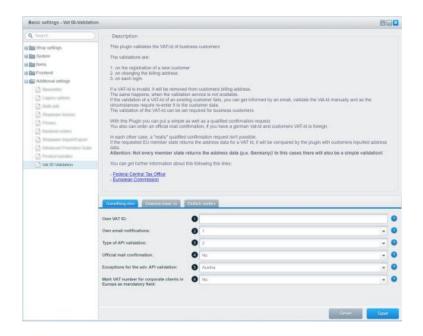
### Installation and configuration

### Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

#### **Plugin configuration**

After the successful installation you can start the configuration of the interface. For this you can either edit the plugin in the plugin manager or use the menu **Additional settings** > **VAT Validation** in the basic settings.



- (1) Please enter you own VAT-ID here.
- (2) In this option you can define, if you want to get a notice for an invalid registration. This can e.g. be done by changing the configuration.
- (3) The extended validation can only be done if you as a shop owner have a German VAT-ID. The request is done with the Federal Central Tax Office and might validate the address data depending on

the country.

- (4) The official confirmation notice is send by mail and can be activated optionally. Further information for this can be found on the homepage of the Federal Central Tax Office of Germany
- (5) If the entry of the VAT-ID is mandatory, you can choose countries that the VAT-ID is not mandatory for in this field. In not-EU-countries there is no VAT-ID, so those are automatically excluded from the compulsory statement.
- (6) Here you can Mark the VAT ID number as mandatory for corporate clients in Europe.

### **Registration with simple validation**

You can see and change all error messages occurring in the frontend in the snippet management. You find the snippets in the namespace /frontend/swag\_vat\_id\_validation/

#### **Possible error messages:**

- The provided VAT ID is too short.
- The provided VAT ID is too long.
- The provided VAT ID has an incorrect country code.
- The provided VAT ID contains incorrect characters.

For this you have to mind that there are different ways of presentations in the frontend. On the one hand there is an error message that is validated right after the entry. This one is displayed next to the field on the right. On the other hand there is an error message atop of the area after you send the form.

### **Registration with extended validation**

For the extended validation you must have a German VAT-ID. This has to be entered in the plugin configuration first. After activating the extended check you can get many different error messages:

#### **Possible error messages:**

- The provided VAT ID is invalid or does not match the provided address.
- The provided VAT ID is not registered in the associated EU member state.
- The provided VAT ID is not valid until %s.
- The provided VAT ID was only valid between %s and %s.
- The provided VAT ID doesn't match the structure of this EU member state's VAT IDs.
- The provided VAT ID doesn't match the digit check rules that apply to this EU member state's VAT IDs.
- The provided VAT ID contains incorrect chars.
- The provided VAT ID has an incorrect country code.

- Your VAT ID has only been approved for taxing intra-EU transactions. You are not allowed to place confirmation requests.
- Your German VAT ID is invalid. A confirmation request is not possible. Contact the Federal Central Tax Office in Saarlouis for more information.
- The provided VAT ID has also been associated to another user. Your request could not be process. Please try again later.
- The validation of a German VAT ID is not supported.
- Your German VAT ID is invalid. It has to start with 'DE' followed by 9 digits.
- Your request does not contain all needed information for a simple confirmation request.
- Your request does not contain all needed information for an extended confirmation request.
- An error occurred while processing the data for the requested EU member state, and your request could not be processed.
- An extended confirmation is not possible at the moment.
- An error occurred while processing the extended confirmation request.
- An error occurred while processing your request for an official mail confirmation. You will not receive one.
- We are not able to process your request at the moment. Please try again later.
- Currently your request cannot be answered by the associated EU member state

The extended validation is only available for customers with an international VAT-ID or EU-membercountries. A validation of national VAT-IDs is not possible.

Please note that the error codes come directly from the official systems, Shopware has no influence on the verification or its result.

You can find more information on the audit on the website of the federal central tax office of Germany in the section Questions and Answers..

#### VAT-ID in an existing customer account

If you activate the extended validation afterwards the validation is also done for existing customer accounts in the login process. If the previously entered address is wrong the customer gets one of the following messages:

- The provided company name doesn't match the provided VAT ID
- The provided street and street number don't match the associated VAT ID
- The provided zip code doesn't match the associated VAT ID
- The provided city doesn't match the associated VAT ID

The fitting snippets can be found in the namespace frontend/swag\_vat\_id\_validation/main.

It is not possible to complete an order with an invalid ID at any time..

#### E-Mail when deleting the VAT-ID

If the verification of an already deposited ID fails, you will be informed by e-mail about the removal of the ID.

This mail can be changed in the backend. For this you find the template at **Configuration > Email templates** in the area "System emails" with the name "sSWAGVATIDVALIDATION\_VALIDATIONERROR".

### Links / Further information

- German federal central tax office Confirmation of foreign VAT identification numbers
- German federal central tax office technical information
- European Commission Validation of the VAT number

# **Shopware ERP powered by Pickware**

With the new Shopware ERP powered by Pickware, elementary merchandise management functions are now available to you centrally in the backend. This powerful merchandise management system is integrated directly and free of charge into the Professional Edition and Professional Plus. So you don't need any interfaces or double data storage anymore - all data is maintained and managed centrally in Shopware ERP powered by Pickware. It also adds many useful functions to your shop that make your daily work easier. These include a supplier order system, a stock overview, detailed evaluation options and the ability to correctly map partial cancellations.

Pickware ERP Helpcenter with documentation

# **Plugin: VAT change / reduction**

### Introduction

This plugin helps you easily change the tax rate. You can change multiple tax rates at once.

### Installation

This extension can be found in our Shopware Store, the easiest way to find a specific plugin is the searchbar. Complete the order process and login to the backend of your store. Navigate to Configuration > Plugin manager > My purchases. You need to login and click the refresh button. Your new extension is now listed and can be installed. After installing the extension go to the menu entry installed and refresh. Activate the extension. Finally delete the cache under Settings > Cache/Performance > Clear Shop Cache and refresh the backend.

### New menu entry

You will find a new menu item under Settings > Basic Settings with the name % Change Taxes.

#### It is not possible to call up the module

If it is not possible to call up the module after installing the plugin, this may be due to missing user rights. Please check under **Settings > User administration** in the tab **Resources & permissions** whether the entry swagtax incl. the assigned **read** is active for the respective roles.

You can find more information on user administration here.

### Changing the tax rate



First, you can make some basic settings for the tax rate changes:

- **Keep gross prices (1)**: Select this option if you want to continue to display the same gross prices in the shop. In this case, the net prices will be adjusted so that they, together with the new tax rate, result in the previous gross price. If you do not activate the option, the net prices are retained and the gross price changes accordingly by the difference of the new tax rate.
- Adjust pseudo prices (2): Activate this option to adjust the pseudo prices of your articles as well.
- Adjust vouchers (3): Here you can define whether the tax rates for the calculation of vouchers should also be adjusted.
- **Adjust discounts (4)**: Define whether the tax rate for the discount calculations should also be adjusted.

Clicking on Next will take you to the next step.

Change taxes			80
		wn menu. Affer you hawe added the decreat tax rates, you can select an existing tax rate". tax rutes should be adjusted.	tex rate in the column "New
Selvet tax:	D		
			Create a new Socrate
= 5	Batecled Iax 10 %	Yine ba cate * Ko: 1 Name, 19%	0
Copy tax rules/	. 9		
	And the costs from the provided the r	en are count to the target to refe. The tar when decist to checked and educated 2 m	inssey

First select which tax rates you would like to adjust (1). All tax rates available in the shop are displayed here (you can manage these in the *basic settings under Shop settings > Taxes*). The selected tax rates are then displayed in the **lower list (2)**. Here you can now select the new tax value to be used instead of the previous tax rate. Here, too, the rates stored in the system are available for selection. In other words, the tax rate is changed. A new tax rate is only required if the rates previously entered in the system are not sufficient. In this case you can create another tax rate by clicking on the button **Create a new tax rate (3)**.

If you want to remove a tax rate already added for the change, this is possible via the **red button (4)**. Optionally, you can select whether the additional tax rules within a tax rate should be copied into the new tax rate **(5)**.

Click on the Next button to proceed to the next step.

hange taxes		80
Information		
Use this selection to define for which custome	groups the prices should be adjusted.	
For example, if you do not want to change the	prices for the net retailer group, you can exclude them here by not adding them to the se	lection.
Click on "Save" to go to the last step. The set	ngs you have made so far will be saved temporarily, but they are not applied yet	
Select customer prosp:		0 -
Customer group	Customer group key	
Datasit	EK	00
		-
		<ul> <li>Printer</li> <li>Street</li> </ul>

Select the customer group you want to change from the **drop-down menu (1)**. The customer group you **selected (2)** is displayed below. You can add several customer groups at once. If you want to remove a customer group you have added, click on the **remove icon (3)**. When you are satisfied with your selection, click **Save (4)** to continue.

Change taxes	828
Information	
Finally, determine whether the changes should be applied immediately or only take effect at a later point.	
Select a date and time for the planned execution. It is also important that the Cron plug-in is active and configured.	
When the changes are executed, the http cache is also cleared.	
Execute	
Execute now (patch mode)	
Schedule	
20 1026-07-01 III 00 00 00 III	
9 <u>500</u>	
	- Pressue
	and the second se

In the last step, you have the option to change the tax immediately. To do this, click on **Execute now** (batch mode) (1). Alternatively, you can select a **specific date and time (2)**. When you have entered the date and time you want to change the tax rate, click on **Save (3)**. You can then close the window.

If you choose the option to schedule the date, the cron plugin and cronjob must be activated.

### **Orders & Documents**

The plugin does not change the tax rates from existing documents and existing orders. For the creation of documents, the tax rate at the time of the order is still used.

So if you create an invoice for an order before the changeover, the old tax rate is still used by default. If you want to create the invoice with the new tax rate, you can change this manually. To do this, select the new tax rate for shipping in the **Order Details** on the **Overview** tab in the **Edit Order** section. Then select the new tax rate for the items in the Items tab. Finally, you can now create the document with the new tax rate in the Documents tab.